Course Companion

HSK 4

Every topic handout in one volume

全部专题讲义合集

exercises.lol

Contents 目录

1. Adjectives 3

2. Adverbs 8

3. Adverbs with adjectives 70

4. Auxiliary words 76

5. Conjunctions 81

6. Nouns 101

7. Numbers 105

8. Particles 112

9. Prepositions 118

10. Sentence patterns — existence emphasis 129

11. Sentence patterns — comparison 132

12. Verbs 136

13. Auxiliary verbs 150

14. Verb phrases 155

15. "But" statements 172

16. "Even if" statements 178

17. "If" statements 182

18. "No matter" statements 186

19. Cause effect statements 191

20. Complements 197

21. Conditional statements 208

22. Noun phrases 214

23. Sentence patterns — quantity scope 220

24. Basic sentence patterns 226

25. Complex sentence patterns 237

26. "Not only ... but also ..." 243

27. Comparing similar adverbs 247

28. Comparing similar prepositions 254

29. Comparing similar words I 259

30. Comparing similar words II 278

31. Say it aloud: opinions, plans and suggestions 282

Adjectives

HSK 4

Two ways to make a description stronger. 全 + noun covers the whole of something (全班, 全家, 全国), and adjective + 死了 is an everyday, exaggerated "extremely": 累死了, 热死了. Both are common in speech; 死了 is informal, so keep it out of essays.

At a glance

- **1.** 全 + Noun – the whole / all of: 全班都在照片里。
- **2.** Adj + 死了 – extremely …: 今天热死了!

1. 全 + Noun (the whole / all of)

Form: 全 + group noun + 都 + verb

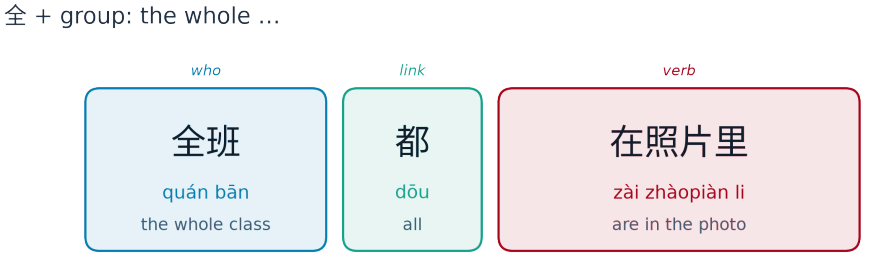
- **全班都在照片里。** *Quán bān dōu zài zhàopiàn li.* – The whole class is in the photo.
- **全家都来了。** *Quán jiā dōu lái le.* – The whole family came.
- **全班都通过了考试。** – The whole class passed the exam.
- **这家公司全年都招人。** – This company hires all year round.

How it works. 全 *quán* + noun gathers one bounded group, "the whole …": 全家, 全班, 全校, 全国, 全年, 全市. 都 before the verb usually follows to stress that every member is included; it is common, but not compulsory. On signs: 全场半价 (the whole store at half price), 全市有雨 (rain across the whole city).

全 + noun	每 / 所有 + noun
the whole of one group	every one, separately; all of them
全家都来了 (our family)	每个家庭都爱拍照 (every family)
全年都在工作 (the whole year through)	每年都来 (comes every year)

Watch out

- 全家都喜欢这个餐厅 is about *this* family. "All families" is 所有家庭.



2. Adj + 死了 (extremely ...)

Form: adjective / feeling verb + 死了 (casual)

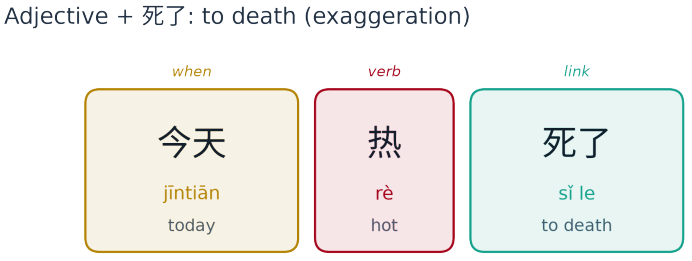
- **今天热死了！** *Jīntiān rè sǐ le!* – It's boiling today!
- **这个作业难死了。** *Zhège zuòyè nán sǐ le.* – This homework is impossibly hard.
- **听到这个消息，我高兴死了！** – I was over the moon when I heard!
- **想死你了！** – I miss you like crazy!

How it works. 死了 *sǐ le* after an adjective exaggerates a feeling to the extreme: 累死了, 饿死了, 忙死了. It ends the clause, and the adjective stands alone. It is casual speech, mostly for complaints, sometimes for strong joy.

极了	死了	得要命	非常 / 十分
enthusiastic, fits praise	casual, mostly complaints	casual	neutral, fits writing
好极了	累死了	累得要命	这个地区的冬天非常冷

Watch out

- No 很 in front: *wrong:* 很冷死了 → 冷死了.
- Not in essays or formal emails: write 非常累 instead.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 全 + Noun (the whole / all of)

1. The whole family came. …… 家都来了。

2. 全班都通过了考试 means…

- A. the class didn't pass
- B. the whole class passed

- C. only the class leader passed
- D. some students passed

3. Which word usually follows a 全 phrase before the verb?

- A. 也
- B. 就
- C. 才
- D. 都

4. True or false? 全场半价 on a shop sign means everything in the shop is half price. If false, correct it.

5. Say in Chinese: "It will rain across the whole city tomorrow."

6. The whole school took part in the sports day.

Put in order: 全校 / 参加了 / 都 / 运动会。

■ 2. Adj + 死了 (extremely ...)

7. Complain to a friend: "I'm exhausted!" 我累 ……!

8. Which sentence suits a formal report?

- A. 这个地区的冬天冷死。
- B. 这个地区的冬天很冷死了。
- C. 这个地区的冬天冷死了。
- D. 这个地区的冬天非常冷。

9. Build: "This homework is impossibly hard."

Put in order: 死了。/ 难 / 这个作业

10. True or false? 想死你了 means "I miss you terribly." If false, correct it.

11. You come into the classroom after cycling across town in 38 degrees. Use Adj + 死了. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

12. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 今天很热死了。
- B. 今天热死了。
- C. 今天死了热。

13. Say "The whole family went to the beach."

14. Find and fix the problem. A visitor complains about the heat: 天气很热死了. Correct the sentence and say when you would use it.

15. Use it yourself. Say that the whole class has arrived, and that you are extremely tired.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 全 + Noun (the whole / all of)

1. 全

全 + group noun.

2. B. the whole class passed

全 + group + 都: everyone in it.

3. D. 都

全 …… 都 stresses that no one is left out.

4. True.

全场 = the whole venue.

5. 明天全市有雨。

全 + 市.

6. 全校都参加了运动会。

全 + group + 都 + verb.

■ 2. Adj + 死了 (extremely …)

7. 死了

Adj + 死了 exaggerates the feeling.

8. D. 这个地区的冬天非常冷。

死了 is casual; a report uses 非常 or 十分.

9. 这个作业难死了。

Subject + Adj + 死了.

10. True.

With 想 (miss), 死 exaggerates the longing.

11. Model answer: 今天热死了!

Check your answer:

- Use it with friends and family; in an essay or a formal email, write 非常累 or 十分饿 instead.
- No 很 or 非常 in front, and nothing between the adjective and 死了: 累死了, not 很累死了.

■ Mixed practice

12. B. 死了 follows the adjective directly and already means “extremely”, so it does not take 很.

13. 全家都去海边了。全 + noun covers everyone, and 都 usually follows.

14. Say 天气热死了. 死了 already means “extremely”, so drop 很. It is casual and exaggerated: fine with friends, not in an essay.

15. Model answer. 全班都到了。我累死了。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 全 with two new nouns and make one complaint with 死了.

Adverbs

HSK 4

HSK 4 adverbs mostly show the speaker's attitude: surprise (竟然, 原来), pressure (只好, 不得不), advice (最好, 千万), doubt (恐怕, 看来) or how close something came (差点, 差不多). They go before the verb or adjective. The groups below put adverbs with similar jobs side by side, so learn the differences inside each group.

At a glance

Surprise and strong feeling

- **1.** 原来 – so it turns out / all along: 原来他牙疼，难怪不吃饭。
- **2.** 竟然 – actually / unexpectedly: 他竟然得了第一名！
- **3.** 难道 – rhetorical: don't tell me …?: 难道你不知道吗?
- **4.** 到底 – on earth / after all: 你到底来不来?
- **5.** 究竟 – exactly / on earth: 那究竟是什么?
- **6.** 可 + Adj – emphatic: 哈尔滨的冬天可冷了！
- **7.** 又 + 不 / 没 – emphatic negation: 我又不是你的服务员！

How much – almost, enough, even, especially, slightly

- **8.** 差不多 – almost / about the same: 这两个手机差不多。
- **9.** 差点 – almost / nearly: 我差点儿摔倒。
- **10.** 够 – enough / sufficient: 菜不够了，我再做两个吧。
- **11.** 甚至 – even / to the point that: 她太忙了，甚至没时间吃饭。
- **12.** 就 – only / just – small quantity: 我就有十块钱。
- **13.** 也都 – also all of them: 他们也都去了博物馆。
- **14.** 尤其 – especially: 我喜欢水果，尤其是西瓜。
- **15.** 稍微 – slightly / a little: 这件稍微大了一点儿，有小一点儿的吗?
- **16.** 几乎 – almost / hardly: 几乎每个人都知道这件事。
- **17.** 偶尔 – once in a while: 我偶尔去电影院。
- **18.** 至少 and 最多 – at least / at most: 做这个菜至少要一个小时。

Advice and having no choice

- **19.** 还是 + Verb – had better: 我们还是坐地铁吧。
- **20.** 最好 – had best / it's best to: 你最好多喝水，早点儿睡觉。
- **21.** 千万 – be sure to / whatever you do: 你千万别忘了带护照！
- **22.** 只好 – have no choice but to: 没有车了，我们只好走回家。
- **23.** 不得不 – have no choice but to: 他发烧了，不得不请假。
- **24.** 尽量 – as much as possible: 我尽量早点儿回来。

Time, plans and results

- **25.** 刚 + Verb – just did: 我刚下飞机，一会儿给你打电话。
- **26.** 本来 – originally / at first: 我本来想去云南，后来去了海南。
- **27.** 先 … ，再 … – first …, then …: 你先填这张表，再去人事部，然后领电脑。
- **28.** 从来 + 不 / 没 – never: 爷爷从来不抽烟。
- **29.** 正好 – just right / exactly: 你来得正好，我正想给你打电话。
- **30.** 结果 – as a result / in the end: 我们准备了一上午，结果下雨了。
- **31.** 顺便 – while you're at it: 你去超市的时候，顺便帮我买一瓶牛奶吧。
- **32.** 忽然 vs 突然 – suddenly: 我们正在吃饭，灯忽然灭了。
- **33.** 重新 vs 再 – start over / once more: 这篇文章我要重新写。

Seeming and guessing

- **34.** 看来 – it seems / in one's view: 看来要下雨了，我们回去吧。
- **35.** 恐怕 – I'm afraid / probably: 恐怕来不及了。
- **36.** 大概 and 也许 – probably / maybe: 他大概已经到家了。
- **37.** 估计 – I reckon, to estimate: 我估计他今天不会来了。

1. 原来 (so it turns out / all along)

Form: 原来 + discovery (，难怪 …) · 原来的 + noun · subject + 原来 + past state

- **原来他牙疼，难怪不吃饭。** *Yuánlái tā yá téng, nánguài bù chī fàn.* – So he has toothache; no wonder he isn't eating.
- **我以为他是老师，原来他是学生。** – I thought he was a teacher, but it turns out he's a student.
- **原来是你！** – Oh, it's you!
- **他原来住在北京，后来搬到了上海。** – He originally lived in Beijing; later he moved to Shanghai.

How it works. 原来 *yuánlái* has two meanings.

At the start of a clause	Before a noun, or with a past state
a discovery: "so it turns out"	"original(ly)", before a change
原来下雪了，难怪这么冷	原来的计划是星期一出发

As a discovery it often pairs with 难怪 (no wonder) and follows 我以为 (I thought). 原来是这样！ means "So that's how it is!"

原来: so it turns out · 难怪: no wonder



2. 竟然 (actually / unexpectedly)

Form: subject + 竟然 / 居然 + verb

- **他竟然得了第一名！** *Tā jìngrán déle dì yī míng!* – He actually won first place!
- **这么简单的题，我竟然做错了。** – I actually got such an easy question wrong.
- **她竟然没来！** – She actually didn't come!
- **六岁的孩子竟然会说三种语言。** – A six-year-old who can speak three languages!

How it works. 竟然 *jìngrán* marks a surprise: the event goes against what the speaker expected, good or bad. It sits after the subject, before the verb. 居然 means the same and is common in speech.

竟然 / 居然	果然
against expectation	just as expected
他竟然没来	天气预报说下雨，果然下雨了

Watch out

- Only for surprises; a plain fact needs no 竟然.
- *wrong:* 竟然他来了 → 他竟然来了.

竟然: surprisingly



3. 难道 (rhetorical: don't tell me ...?)

Form: 难道 + statement + 吗? · subject + 难道 + … + 吗?

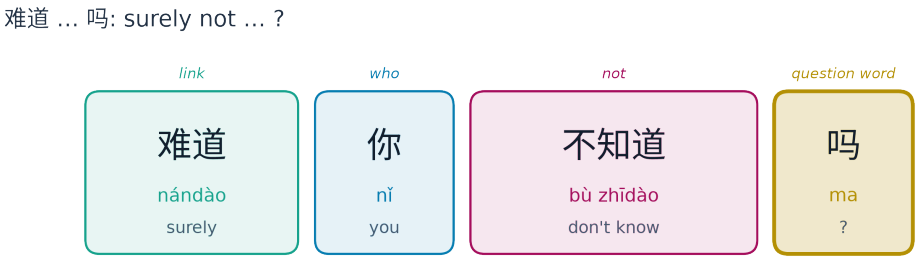
- **难道你不知道吗?** *Nándào nǐ bù zhīdào ma?* – Don't tell me you don't know?
- **难道他真的忘了吗?** – Can he really have forgotten?
- **难道你不饿吗?** – Surely you're hungry?
- **这么重要的事，难道你不应该先问我吗?** – Shouldn't you have asked me first about something so important?

How it works. 难道 *nándào* makes a rhetorical question: the speaker already believes the answer is the opposite of what the words say. A negative 难道 question means "surely yes": 难道你不累吗? = "You must be tired." It shows surprise or reproach. 难道 goes at the start or after the subject.

你知道吗?	难道你不知道吗?
a real question	"You must know!" (surprise, annoyance)

Watch out

- 难道 never asks for information you don't have.



4. 到底 (on earth / after all)

Form: subject + 到底 + question word / A-not-A · 到底 in statements (after all)

- **你到底来不来?** *Nǐ dàodǐ lái bu lái?* – Are you coming or not?
- **这到底是怎么回事?** *Zhè dàodǐ shì zěnme huí shì?* – What on earth is going on?
- **他到底是个孩子，别太生气。** – He is just a child, after all; don't be too angry.
- **我们等了很久，他到底还是来了。** – We waited a long time, and in the end he did come.

How it works. In a question, 到底 *dàodǐ* adds impatience or insistence: "on earth, exactly". It goes after the subject, before the question part, and needs a question word or an A-not-A form. In a statement it means "after all" or "in the end".

Watch out

- No 吗 with 到底: *wrong:* 你到底去吗? → 你到底去不去?

到底 in a question: so which is it?



5. 究竟 (exactly / on earth)

Form: topic + 究竟 + question word / A-not-A

- **那究竟是什么?** *Nà jiūjìng shì shénme?* – What exactly was it?
- **事故的原因究竟是什么?** *Shìgù de yuányīn jiūjìng shì shénme?* – What exactly caused the accident?
- **我们究竟应该怎么做?** – What exactly should we do?

How it works. 究竟 *jiūjìng* works like 到底 in questions, but sounds more serious and suits reports and discussions. It goes after the topic and before the question part, and needs a question word or A-not-A.

到底	究竟
spoken, often impatient	more formal, calmer
also in statements: 他到底还是来了	rarely in statements

Watch out

- No 吗: *wrong:* 你究竟同意吗? → 你究竟同意不同意?

究竟: what on earth (formal 到底)



6. 可 + Adj (emphatic)

Form: 可 + adjective + 了 / 呢 · 可 + 别 / 要 + verb

- **哈尔滨的冬天可冷了！** *Hā'ěrbīn de dōngtiān kě lěng le!* – Harbin winters are really cold!
- **这个电影可有意思了。** – This film is really interesting.
- **你可别忘了！** *Nǐ kě bié wàng le!* – Don't you forget!
- **你可要小心！** – Do be careful!

How it works. 可 *kě* before an adjective adds spoken emphasis: "really, so". It often tells someone something they may not know or believe, and it needs 了 or 呢 at the end. Before 别 or 要, it makes a warning or reminder more urgent.

At the start of a clause, 可 is short for 可是 "but": 我想去，可没时间.

Watch out

- *wrong:* 可冷 alone → 可冷了.
- In writing, use 非常 or 十分 instead.



7. 又 + 不 / 没 (emphatic negation)

Form: subject + 又 + 不 / 没 + verb (protest)

- **我又不是你的服务员！** *Wǒ yòu bú shì nǐ de fúwùyuán!* – I'm not your waiter, you know!
- **你别怪他，他又没做错。** *Nǐ bié guài tā, tā yòu méi zuòcuò.* – Don't blame him; it's not as if he did anything wrong.
- **怕什么？他又不会吃了你。** – What are you afraid of? He's not going to eat you.
- **我又不是不想去。** – It's not that I don't want to go.

How it works. Here 又 does not mean "again". Before 不 or 没 it strengthens the denial to reject what someone assumes: "it's not as if …". It is spoken and often impatient or defensive, and usually explains a reaction (别怪他, 怕什么).

又不 / 又没	并不 / 并没
personal, emotional, spoken	calm, more written
我又不是小孩子!	这个问题并不难。

Watch out

- In a neutral statement, plain 不 / 没 is enough: 他没做错.



8. 差不多 (almost / about the same)

Form: A 跟 / 和 B 差不多 (+ adjective) · 差不多 + number / time / 都

- **这两个手机差不多。** *Zhè liǎng ge shǒujī chàbuduō.* – These two phones are about the same.
- **我跟我哥哥差不多高。** *Wǒ gēn wǒ gēge chàbuduō gāo.* – I'm about as tall as my brother.
- **差不多十点了。** – It's almost ten.
- **同学们差不多都来了。** – Almost all the classmates have come.

How it works. 差不多 *chàbuduō* has two jobs, told apart by position.

After the things compared	Before a number, time or 都
"about the same, similar"	"almost, about"
价格差不多	差不多五十个人

After a verb + 得 it can mean "nearly done": 作业写得差不多了. 差不多就行了 means "that's good enough".

差不多	差点儿
about, almost (an amount)	nearly happened, but didn't
差不多十点了	我差点儿迟到

差不多: about the same



9. 差点 (almost / nearly)

Form: subject + 差点儿 (+ 没) + verb (+ 了)

- **我差点儿摔倒。** *Wǒ chàdiǎnr shuāidǎo.* – I nearly fell.
- **我差点儿忘了你的生日！** *Wǒ chàdiǎnr wàngle nǐ de shēngrì!* – I nearly forgot your birthday!
- **我差点儿没赶上火车。** – I nearly missed the train (but caught it).
- **他差点儿没考上大学。** – He nearly failed to get into university (but got in).

How it works. 差点儿 *chàdiǎnr* + verb: something almost happened, but did not. It goes after the subject, before the verb. The tricky part is adding 没.

Result	差点儿 + verb	差点儿没 + verb
unwanted (fall, crash)	nearly happened	the same: nearly happened
wanted (pass, catch)	nearly happened, but didn't: 差点儿考上 = just failed	it did happen, only just: 差点儿没考上 = only just passed

Watch out

- 差点儿 (nearly happened) is not 差不多 (about, in amount): 差不多十点了.

差点儿: nearly (but didn't)



10. 够 (enough / sufficient)

Form: noun + (不) 够 · 够 + verb (enough to) · 够 + adjective

- **菜不够了，我再做两个吧。** *Cài bú gòu le, wǒ zài zuò liǎng ge ba.* – There isn't enough food; I'll make two more dishes.
- **钱够不够?** *Qián gòu bu gòu?* – Is there enough money?
- **钱够买一张票。** – The money is enough to buy one ticket.
- **这些水不够喝。** – This water isn't enough to drink.

How it works. 够 *gòu* "enough" follows the thing that is enough: 钱够了, 时间不够, 我们人够了. To say what it is enough *for*, put the verb after 够: 够吃, 够用, 够买一张票. 够 + adjective means "… enough": 这个房间够大. 足够 is more formal: 我们有足够的时间.

Watch out

- 够吃 (enough to eat) is not 吃够 (have had your fill of something).



11. 甚至 (even / to the point that)

Form: …, 甚至 + strongest point · 甚至 + 连 … 都 / 也

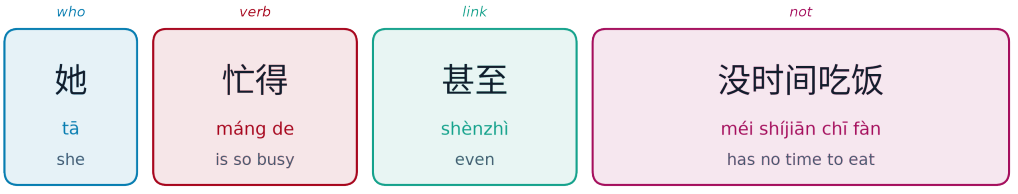
- **她忙得甚至没时间吃饭。** *Tā máng de shènzhì méi shíjiān chī fàn.* – She's so busy she doesn't even have time to eat.
- **这首歌大人喜欢，孩子喜欢，甚至老人也喜欢。** – Adults like this song, children like it, even old people like it.
- **他甚至连自己的名字都写错了。** – He even wrote his own name wrong.
- **他不说话，甚至不看我。** – He won't speak; he won't even look at me.

How it works. 甚至 *shènzhì* "even" introduces the most extreme or surprising point. It goes before the part it highlights, usually last in a list. It is more formal than 连 …… 都 alone, and the two often appear together. Unlike 连 …… 都, it can also join whole clauses to raise the stakes.

Watch out

- The 甚至 item must be the strongest one: in 夏天热，春天也热，甚至冬天也不冷, it comes before the most surprising part.

甚至: even



12. 就 (only / just – small quantity)

Form: 就 + amount / person (only)

- **我就有十块钱。** *Wǒ jiù yǒu shí kuài qián.* – I've only got ten yuan.
- **就两个人来了。** *Jiù liǎng ge rén lái le.* – Only two people came.
- **我就去过一次。** – I've only been once.
- **就这么多了?** – Is that all?

How it works. Before an amount or a person, 就 means "only, just". It is casual and matter-of-fact, and is stressed in speech. Between a time and a verb, 就 has its other meaning, "as early as": 他六点就起床了.

只	就	才
neutral "only"	casual "only"	"only", with surprise
我只有十块钱	我就有十块钱	他才十岁!

就 + amount: only



13. 也都 (also all of them)

Form: subject + 也 + 都 + verb / 不 / 没

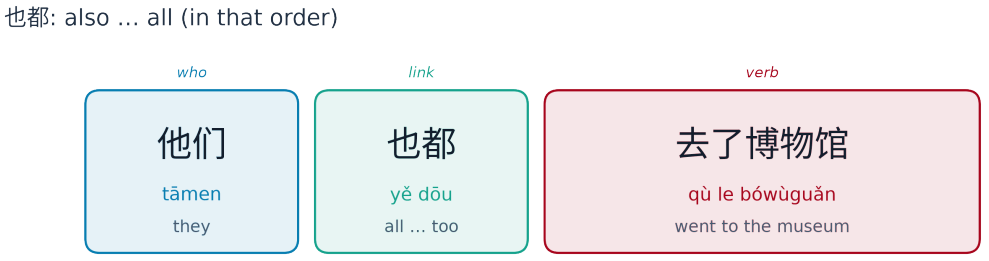
- **他们也都去了博物馆。** *Tāmen yě dōu qùle bówùguǎn.* – They all went to the museum too.
- **我的朋友喜欢这首歌，我的父母也都喜欢。** – My friends like this song, and my parents both like it too.
- **他们也都不知道。** – None of them knows either.

How it works. 也 adds this group to another; 都 says every member of the group is included. Together they come after the subject, in a fixed order: 也 first, then 都.

我们都去	我们也去	我们也都去
all of us are going	we are going too	we are all going too

Watch out

- *wrong:* 都也 → 也都.



14. 尤其 (especially)

Form: general fact, 尤其是 + noun · subject + 尤其 + verb / adjective

- **我喜欢水果，尤其是西瓜。** *Wǒ xǐhuan shuǐguǒ, yóuqí shì xīguā.* – I like fruit, especially watermelon.
- **他喜欢运动，尤其是踢足球。** – He likes sport, especially football.
- **这里冬天很冷，晚上尤其冷。** – Winters here are cold, and the nights are especially cold.

How it works. First say something about a whole group; then 尤其 picks out the one case that fits it most. 尤其是 comes before a noun; 尤其 alone goes before a verb or adjective, after the subject.

特别好	我特别喜欢秋天	我尤其喜欢秋天
really good (very)	I especially like autumn	I especially like autumn

Watch out

- *wrong:* 尤其是饺子，我喜欢中国菜 → 我喜欢中国菜，尤其是饺子 (the group comes first).
- For plain "very" with no group, use 很 or 特别, not 尤其.



15. 稍微 (slightly / a little)

Form: 稍微 + adjective + 一点儿 / 一些 · 稍微 + verb + 一下 / 一点儿

- **今天比昨天稍微暖和一点儿。** *Jīntiān bǐ zuótiān shāowēi nuǎnhuo yìdiǎnr.* – Today is a little warmer than yesterday.
- **请稍微等一下。** – Please wait a moment.
- **你能稍微说慢一点儿吗?** – Could you speak a little more slowly?

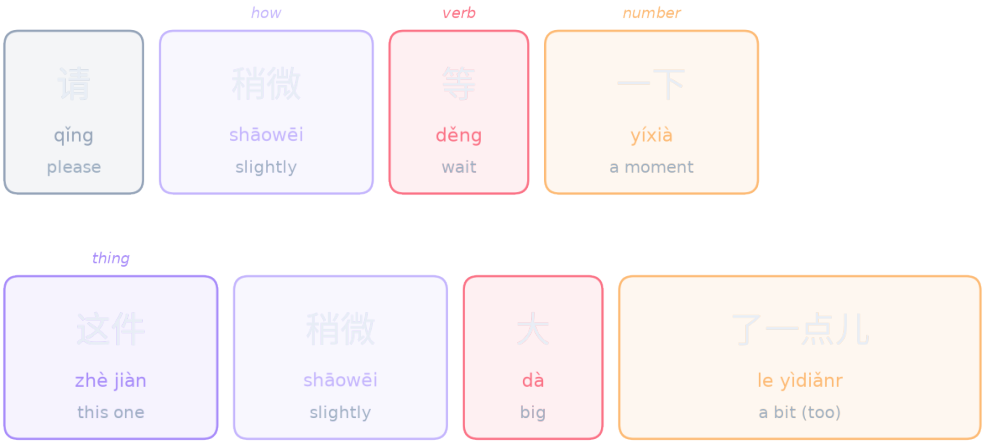
How it works. 稍微 makes a difference or an action small. It goes before the adjective or verb, and a small amount (一点儿, 一些, 一下) goes after it. With a verb, it makes a request sound polite.

有点儿贵	稍微贵一点儿	稍微等一下
a bit (too) expensive – a complaint	a little more expensive – a comparison	wait a moment – a polite request

Watch out

- *wrong:* 稍微贵 → 稍微贵一点儿.
- *wrong:* 等稍微一下 → 稍微等一下.
- 稍微有点儿 + adjective is also fine: 稍微有点儿贵 is a very soft complaint.

稍微 … 一点儿 / 一下: just a little



16. 几乎 (almost / hardly)

Form: 几乎 + 都 / 每 / 所有 … · 几乎 + 不 / 没 + verb

- **几乎每个人都知道这件事。** *Jīhū měi ge rén dōu zhīdào zhè jiàn shì.* – Almost everyone knows about it.
- **他几乎每天都跑步。** – He runs almost every day.
- **他昨天几乎没睡觉。** – He hardly slept last night.

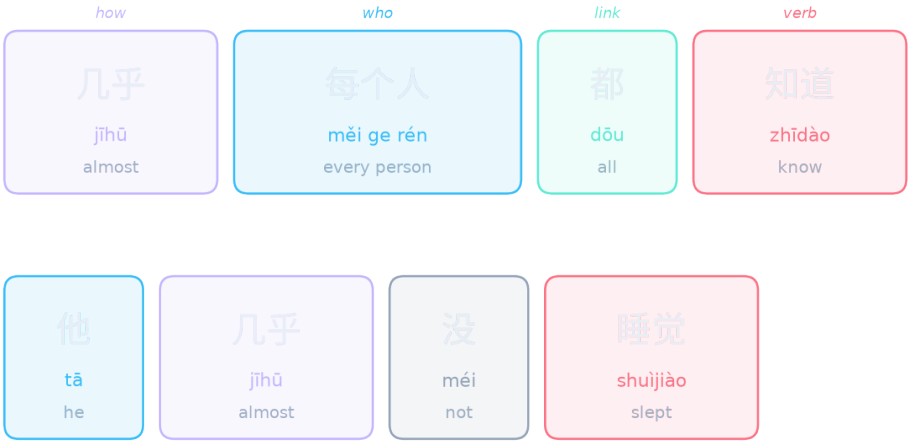
How it works. 几乎 says something is very close to the whole amount. With 都, 每 or 所有 it means "almost all"; with 不 or 没 it means "hardly, almost never". It goes after the subject, before the verb.

几乎每天	差点儿迟到	差不多
almost every day (how much)	nearly late (a close call)	about the same; can stand alone

Watch out

- For a close call, 差点儿 is the most common word (几乎摔倒 "nearly fell" is also possible).
- *wrong:* 这两个几乎 → 这两个差不多 (几乎 cannot stand alone).

几乎: very close to all (or none)



17. 偶尔 (once in a while)

Form: subject + 偶尔 + verb

- **我偶尔去电影院。** *Wǒ ǒu'ěr qù diànyǐngyuàn.* – I go to the cinema once in a while.
- **他不常喝酒，偶尔喝一点儿。** – He doesn't drink often, just a little now and then.
- **周末我偶尔去爬山。** – At weekends I go hiking now and then.

How it works. 偶尔 says something happens, but rarely. Like the other "how often" words, it comes after the subject and before the verb.

总是	经常	有时候	偶尔	从来不
always	often	sometimes	once in a while	never

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我打篮球偶尔 → 我偶尔打篮球.
- One single time is 一次, not 偶尔: 去年我去过一次上海.

偶尔 + verb: once in a while



18. 至少 and 最多 (at least / at most)

Form: 至少 / 最多 + verb or number · 至少 + sentence

- **做这个菜至少要一个小时。** *Zuò zhège cài zhìshǎo yào yí ge xiǎoshí.* – This dish takes at least an hour to cook.
- **我最多等你十分钟。** – I'll wait ten minutes for you, at most.
- **虽然输了，但至少我们努力了。** – We lost, but at least we tried our best.

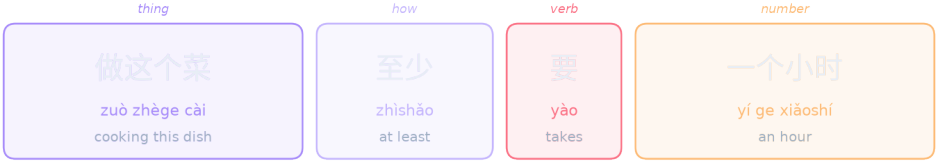
How it works. 至少 sets a lower limit and 最多 an upper limit; both go before the verb or number. 至少 + a sentence gives the smallest thing that should happen, or the one good point.

至少一个小时	最多十分钟	一百人以上
at least an hour	ten minutes at most	over a hundred people

Watch out

- *wrong:* 至少一百人以上 → 至少一百人.

至少 + amount: at least



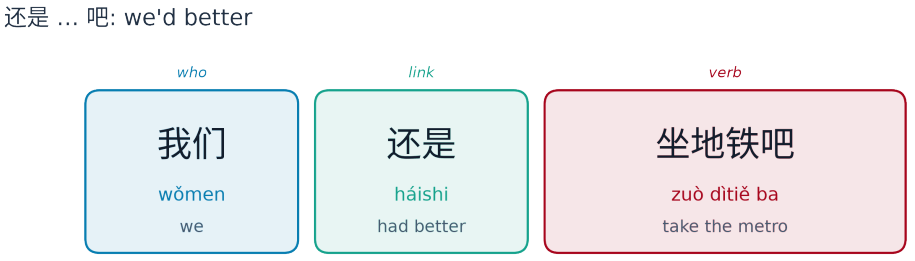
19. 还是 + Verb (had better)

Form: (subject +) 还是 + verb (+ 吧) · 还是 + 不 + verb + 了

- **我们还是坐地铁吧。** *Wǒmen háishi zuò dìtiě ba.* – We'd better take the subway.
- **下雨了，我们还是在家吧。** – It's raining; we'd better stay home.
- **想了想，我还是不去了。** *Xiǎngle xiǎng, wǒ háishi bú qù le.* – I thought it over, and I'm not going after all.

How it works. Before a verb in a statement, 还是 *háishi* means "had better": a decision reached after weighing the options. 吧 makes it a gentle suggestion. 还是不 …… 了 reverses a plan.

还是 + verb	A 还是 B?	最好 + verb
had better, after weighing options	"or" in a question	direct advice
我们还是打车吧	你去还是我去?	你最好早点儿去



20. 最好 (had best / it's best to)

Form: subject + 最好 + verb · 最好别 / 最好不要 + verb

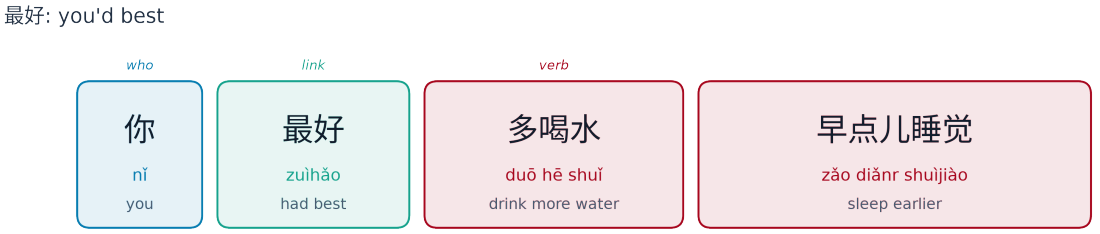
- **你最好多喝水，早点儿睡觉。** *Nǐ zuìhǎo duō hē shuǐ, zǎodiǎnr shuìjiào.* – You'd best drink plenty of water and go to bed early.
- **最好提前订票，不然买不到。** – It's best to book in advance, or you won't get a ticket.
- **你今晚最好别开车。** – You'd better not drive tonight.

How it works. 最好 *zuìhǎo* + verb gives friendly but clear advice: "it's best to, you'd better". It goes after the subject. 最好的 + noun is a different use: "the best" (他是我最好的朋友).

应该	最好
what is right or expected	the wisest option
你应该道歉	你最好先道歉

Watch out

- "Better not" is *wrong:* 不最好去 → 最好别去.



21. 千万 (be sure to / whatever you do)

Form: (subject +) 千万 + 别 / 不要 / 要 + verb

- **你千万别忘了带护照！** *Nǐ qiānwàn bié wàngle dài hùzhào!* – Whatever you do, don't forget your passport!
- **这件事千万不要告诉别人。** – Whatever you do, don't tell anyone about this.
- **你千万要注意身体。** – Do take care of yourself.

How it works. 千万 *qiānwàn* makes advice or a warning urgent: "whatever you do, (don't) …". It goes before 别 / 不要 / 要, after the subject. It is mostly used to warn against something going wrong.

一定要	千万别 / 千万要
must, definitely	urgent warning or reminder
你一定要来	你千万别迟到

Watch out

- Only in advice or requests, never to describe facts: *wrong:* 他千万没来.



22. 只好 (have no choice but to)

Form: obstacle, subject + 只好 + verb

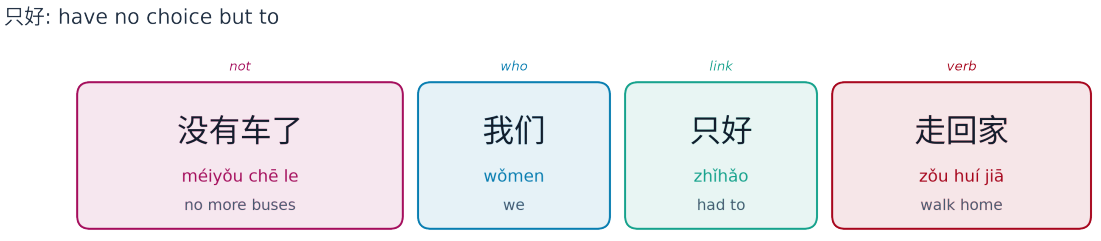
- **没有车了，我们只好走回家。** *Méiyǒu chē le, wǒmen zhǐhǎo zǒu huí jiā.* – There's no transport left, so we have no choice but to walk home.
- **电梯坏了，我们只好走楼梯。** – The lift is broken, so we have to take the stairs.
- **商店关门了，我只好明天再来。** – The shop was closed, so I'll have to come back tomorrow.

How it works. 只好 *zhǐhǎo* means "have no choice but to": after an obstacle, this action is the only option left. Give the reason first; 只好 goes after the subject of the result. It sounds resigned: "Oh well, I'll just have to …".

只好	不得不
resigned, second-best choice	stronger, forced by duty or pressure
他不会做饭，只好吃方便面	他病了，我不得不替他上课

Watch out

- 只好 with no reason sounds incomplete. Say what blocked you first.
- *wrong:* 只好我走路 → 我只好走路.



23. 不得不 (have no choice but to)

Form: subject + 不得不 + verb

- **他发烧了，不得不请假。** *Tā fāshāo le, bùdébù qǐngjià.* – He has a fever, so he has no choice but to take time off.
- **因为没钱，他不得不卖掉了车。** – Because he had no money, he had to sell his car.
- **飞机晚点了，我们不得不在机场住一晚。** – The flight was delayed, so we had to spend a night at the airport.
- **我不得不走了。** – I have to leave now.

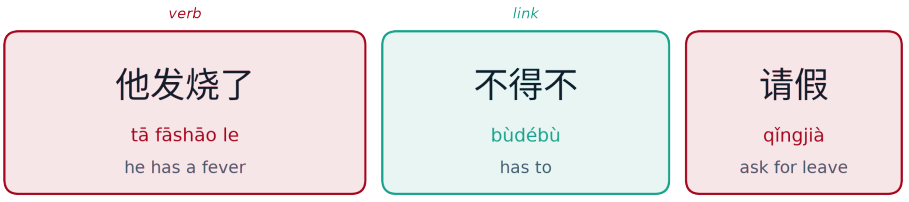
How it works. 不得不 *bùdébù* is a double negative, "cannot not": the situation forces the action. It goes after the subject.

只好	不得不	必须
resigned, casual	forced by the situation	a requirement
没车了，只好走回去	我们不得不改计划	你必须带护照

Watch out

- 不得不 means “must”, never “mustn’t”. “Mustn’t” is 不能 or 不可以: 这里不能停车.

不得不: have to (no way round it)



24. 尽量 (as much as possible)

Form: subject + 尽量 + verb · 尽量不 / 尽量别 + verb

- **我尽量早点儿回来。** *Wǒ jǐnliàng zǎo diǎnr huílai.* – I’ll try my best to come back early.
- **请尽量说汉语。** – Please speak Chinese as much as possible.
- **晚上尽量别玩手机。** – Try not to use your phone at night.

How it works. 尽量 means “as much as possible” and goes before the verb. It is about trying, so it suits promises, plans and advice.

尽量多吃蔬菜	尽量别熬夜	我已经尽力了
eat as many vegetables as you can	try not to stay up late	I’ve done my best (尽力)

Watch out

- “I’ve done my best” is usually 我已经尽力了.
- 尽量 comes before the verb.



25. 刚 + Verb (just did)

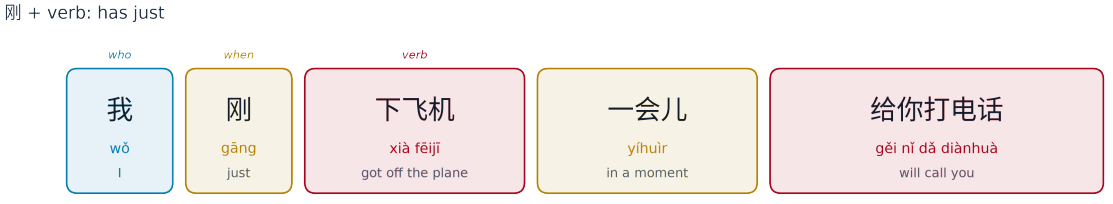
Form: subject + 刚 + verb (+ duration) · 刚 ……, 就 ……

- **我刚下飞机，一会儿给你打电话。** *Wǒ gāng xià fēijī, yíhuìr gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà.* – I've just got off the plane; I'll call you in a bit.
- **他刚走。** *Tā gāng zǒu.* – He has just left.
- **他刚来北京两个月。** – He's only been in Beijing for two months.
- **我刚到家，就下雨了。** – I'd only just got home when it started to rain.

How it works. 刚 *gāng* + verb means something happened a short time ago. It sits right before the verb, and the sentence usually needs no 了. "Recent" is the speaker's view: two months is 刚 for a newcomer. 刚 …… 就 …… says the second event followed immediately.

Watch out

- 刚 never starts the sentence: *wrong:* 刚我到 → 我刚到 (刚才 can start one).



26. 本来 (originally / at first)

Form: subject + 本来 + plan / situation, 后来 / 可是 + change · 本来就 (naturally)

- **我本来想去云南，后来去了海南。** *Wǒ běnlái xiǎng qù Yúnnán, hòulái qùle Hǎinán.* – I originally wanted to go to Yunnan, but in the end I went to Hainan.

- **我本来不想来，可是朋友一定要我来。** – I didn't really want to come, but my friend insisted.
- **我本来打算星期一走。** – I originally planned to leave on Monday.
- **学生本来就应该学习。** – Students are, of course, supposed to study.

How it works. 本来 *běnlái* gives the original plan or situation before something changed. It goes after the subject or at the start, often followed by 后来, 可是 or 但是. 本来就 has no change of plan: it says something was always, obviously true.

本来	原来
originally	originally; also a discovery
本来的计划	原来是你!

Watch out

- Only 原来 announces a discovery: *wrong:* 本来是你! → 原来是你!



27. 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

Form: 先 A，再 B (，然后 C，最后 D) · 等 … 再 … · 先 … 再说

- **你先填这张表，再去人事部，然后领电脑。** *Nǐ xiān tián zhè zhāng biǎo, zài qù rénshìbù, ránhòu lǐng diànnǎo.* – First fill in this form, then go to HR, and after that collect your computer.
- **等雨停了再走。** *Děng yǔ tíngle zài zǒu.* – Wait until the rain stops before you leave.
- **先吃饭，别的事以后再说。** – Let's eat first; we can talk about the rest later.

How it works. 先 …… 再 …… orders steps still to come: plans, instructions and suggestions. Add 然后 and 最后 for longer sequences. Both 先 and 再 come after the subject, before their own verbs: 我先走，你再走.

- **等 …… 再 ……** "wait until … then": 再 means "only then".
- **…… 再说** puts a matter off until later.

Watch out

- Not for the past. Yesterday's steps take 先 …… 然后 …… with 了: 我先去了银行，然后去了超市.



28. 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

Form: subject + 从来不 + verb (habit) · subject + 从来没 (有) + verb + 过 (experience)

- **爷爷从来不抽烟。** *Yéye cónglái bù chōuyān.* – Grandpa has never smoked.
- **她从来不吃肉。** *Tā cónglái bù chī ròu.* – She never eats meat.
- **我从来没去过西藏。** *Wǒ cónglái méi qùguo Xīzàng.* – I've never been to Tibet.
- **他从来不着急。** – He's never in a hurry.

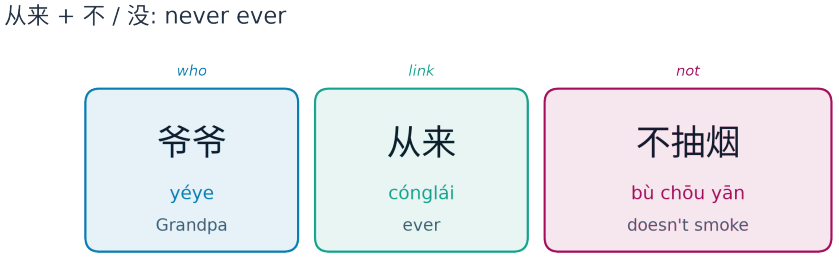
How it works. 从来 *cónglái* goes after the subject and strengthens a negative to "never (ever)".

从来不 + verb	从来没 + verb + 过
a habit, rule or choice	an experience that has never happened
他从来不喝酒	我从来没吃过榴莲

过 highlights experience in this model; it is not required after every 从来没.

Watch out

- 从来 is not the usual word for "always". In a positive sentence, 从来都 stresses "without exception" (他从来都是这样); a plain "always" is 一直 or 总是.



29. 正好 (just right / exactly)

Form: 正好 (just right) · verb + 得 + 正好 · 正好 + verb (happen to) · 正好 + number (exactly)

- **你来得正好，我正想给你打电话。** *Nǐ lái de zhènghǎo, wǒ zhèng xiǎng gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà.* – You've come at just the right moment; I was about to call you.
- **大小正好。** – The size is just right.
- **我正好也要去超市，一起走吧。** – I happen to be going to the supermarket too; let's go together.
- **一共正好五十块。** – That's exactly fifty yuan altogether.

How it works. 正好 *zhènghǎo* means "just right" or "exactly". Before a verb it points to a lucky coincidence: "happen to". At the start of a sentence it stresses the lucky timing: 正好，他也在那儿. 刚好 means almost the same.

正好	正在	左右 / 差不多
just right, exactly, happen to	in the middle of doing	about
正好一百块	我正在吃饭	一百块左右

Watch out

- "I'm eating" is 我正在吃饭, not *wrong:* 我正好吃饭.



30. 结果 (as a result / in the end)

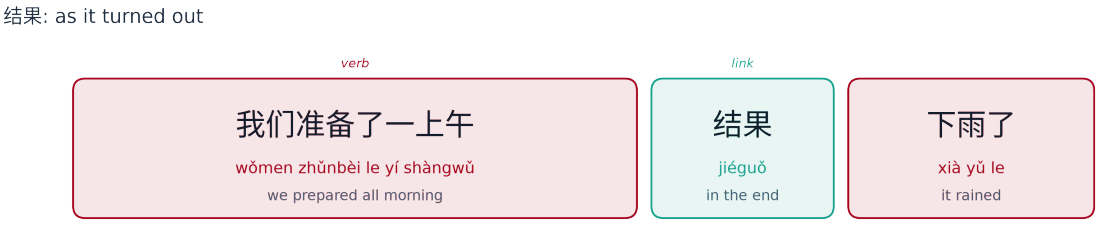
Form: what happened before, 结果 + what finally happened

- **我们准备了一上午，结果下雨了。** *Wǒmen zhǔnbèile yí shàngwǔ, jiéguǒ xià yǔ le.* – We spent the whole morning preparing, and in the end it rained.
- **他睡得很晚，结果今天迟到了。** – He went to bed late, and as a result he was late today.
- **我试了一下，结果真的成功了。** – I gave it a try, and it actually worked.
- **考试的结果出来了。** – The exam results are out.

How it works. 结果 *jiéguǒ* introduces what actually happened in the end, often a surprise or a disappointment, sometimes good news. It starts the second clause. As a noun it means "result, outcome": 比赛的结果是二比一; 结果怎么样?

Watch out

- 结果 reports a real outcome, not a plan: *wrong:* 如果下雨，结果我们不去 → 如果下雨，我们就不去.
- In most speech it starts the clause: ……，结果他迟到了.



31. 顺便 (while you're at it)

Form: main action，顺便 + small extra action ．顺便问一下，…

- **你去超市的时候，顺便帮我买一瓶牛奶吧。** *Nǐ qù chāoshì de shíhou, shùnbiàn bāng wǒ mǎi yì píng niúnǎi ba.* – When you go to the supermarket, could you pick up a bottle of milk for me while you're there?
- **我下班回家，顺便去了一趟银行。** – On my way home from work, I stopped at the bank.
- **顺便问一下，你明天有空吗?** – By the way, are you free tomorrow?

How it works. 顺便 adds a small extra job to something you are doing anyway. It goes before the extra action. 顺便问一下 means "by the way".

顺便	另外
while you're at it (tied to a main action)	also, in addition (a separate point)

Watch out

- There must be a main action for 顺便 to attach to.
- *wrong:* 帮我买顺便 → 顺便帮我买.



32. 忽然 vs 突然 (suddenly)

Form: 忽然 / 突然 + verb · 突然 (adjective): 太突然了, 突然的变化

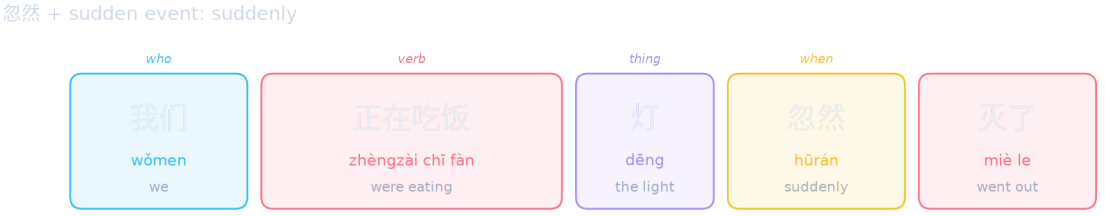
- **我们正在吃饭，灯忽然灭了。** *Wǒmen zhèngzài chī fàn, dēng hūrán miè le.* – We were having dinner when suddenly the lights went out.
- **忽然，外面下起了大雨。** – Suddenly it started pouring outside.
- **这个消息太突然了。** – This news is so sudden.

How it works. As adverbs, 忽然 and 突然 both mean "suddenly" and usually swap. Only 突然 is also an adjective, so only 突然 takes 很 / 太; before a noun with 的, the usual word is 突然.

灯忽然灭了	太突然了	突然的变化
the light suddenly went out	so sudden	a sudden change

Watch out

- *wrong:* 太忽然了 → 太突然了.



33. 重新 vs 再 (start over / once more)

Form: 重新 + verb (start over) · 再 + verb (once more)

- **这篇文章我要重新写。** *Zhè piān wénzhāng wǒ yào chóngxīn xiě.* – I need to rewrite this essay from the start.
- **请再说一遍。** – Please say it once more.
- **请重新再做一遍。** – Please do it all over again.

How it works. 重新 means you start over, often because the first try was wrong or needs a new way. 再 means once more, for something not yet done. 又 is for a repeat that already happened.

重新开始	明天再来	他又迟到了
start again	come again tomorrow	he was late again

Watch out

- *wrong:* 明天重新来 → 明天再来. *wrong:* 他重新迟到了 → 他又迟到了.

重新 + verb: do it again from the start



34. 看来 (it seems / in one's view)

Form: evidence, 看来 + conclusion · 在 + person + 看来, opinion

- **看来要下雨了，我们回去吧。** *Kànlái yào xià yǔ le, wǒmen huíqu ba.* – It looks like it's going to rain; let's head back.
- **他到现在还没回消息，看来是很忙。** – He still hasn't replied; he must be busy.
- **在我看来，这个办法不太好。** *Zài wǒ kànlái, zhège bànfǎ bú tài hǎo.* – In my view, this approach isn't very good.

How it works. 看来 *kànlái* draws a conclusion from what you have noticed: "it seems, it looks as if". The evidence often comes first; 看来 then starts the conclusion. 在 …… 看来 gives someone's opinion instead.

看来	看起来
a conclusion from evidence	how something looks
看来这儿的菜不太好吃	她看起来很年轻

Watch out

- 看来 goes before the conclusion: *wrong:* 他病了看来 → 看来他病了.

看来: it seems (from what you see)



35. 恐怕 (I'm afraid / probably)

Form: 恐怕 + unwelcome guess · subject + 恐怕 + guess

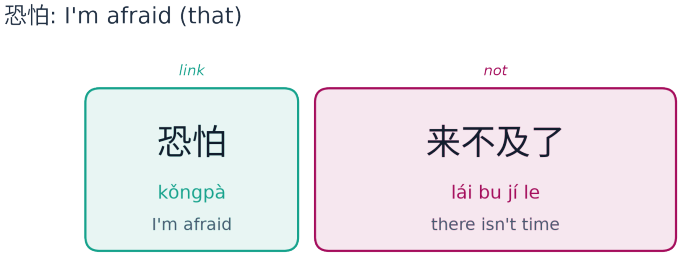
- **恐怕来不及了。** *Kǒngpà láibují le.* – I'm afraid we won't make it.
- **恐怕票已经卖完了。** – I'm afraid the tickets are sold out.
- **这件事恐怕有点儿难。** – I'm afraid this may be a bit difficult.
- **明天恐怕要下雨。** – It'll probably rain tomorrow, I'm afraid.

How it works. 恐怕 *kǒngpà* introduces a cautious guess, usually about unwelcome news, and softens it. It can start the sentence or follow the subject.

可能	恐怕	怕
neutral maybe	probably, with regret	be scared of
他可能在家	他恐怕来不了了	妹妹怕黑

Watch out

- "Scared of dogs" is 我怕狗, not *wrong:* 我恐怕狗.



36. 大概 and 也许 (probably / maybe)

Form: 大概 / 也许 + verb · 大概 + number

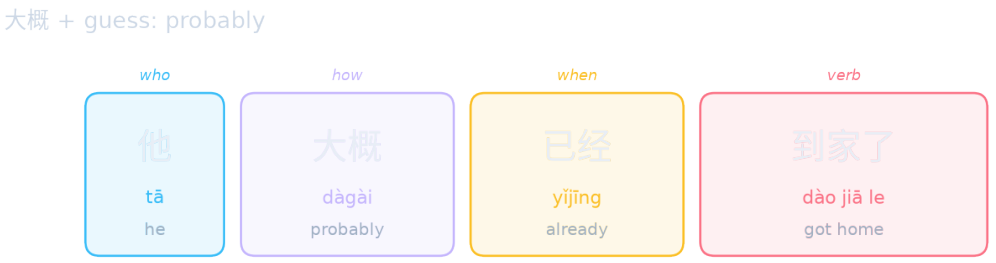
- **他大概已经到家了。** *Tā dàgài yǐjīng dào jiā le.* – He's probably home by now.
- **也许他忘了。** – Maybe he forgot.
- **大概有三十个人。** – There were about thirty people.

How it works. 大概 = probably (fairly sure); before a number it means "roughly". 也许 = maybe (less sure). Neither takes 很 or 不: for that, use 可能 (很可能, 不可能).

大概到家了	也许忘了	大概三十个人	很可能
probably home	maybe forgot	about thirty people	very likely

Watch out

- *wrong:* 很大概 → 很可能. In writing and exams, *wrong:* 大概三十个人左右 → 大概三十个人.



37. 估计 (I reckon, to estimate)

Form: 我估计 + guess · subject + 估计 + verb · 估计 + number

- **我估计他今天不会来了。** *Wǒ gūjì tā jīntiān bú huì lái le.* – I reckon he's not coming today.
- **他估计已经睡了。** – He's probably asleep already.
- **我估计有两百多人。** – I reckon there are over two hundred people.

How it works. 估计 makes a guess based on facts, or gives a rough number. 大概 = probably; 也许 = maybe (less sure); 看来 = it seems (from what you see or know now).

我估计他会来	估计要一个小时	看来要下雨了
I reckon he'll come	probably takes an hour	looks like rain

Watch out

- To state a fact you are sure of, leave 估计 out: 他一定会来.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 原来 (so it turns out / all along)

1. You hear a knock and open the door: "Oh, it's you!" …… 是你!

2. In 原来的计划是星期一出发, what does 原来 mean?

- A. original
- B. so it turns out
- C. no wonder
- D. suddenly

3. Build: "So it snowed – no wonder it's so cold."

Put in order: 原来下雪了 / 难怪 / ， / 这么冷。

4. True or false? 我以为他是老师，原来他是学生 means he turned out to be a student. If false, correct it.

5. Your colleague hasn't touched his lunch all week. Today you find out he has a toothache. Use 原来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 竟然 (actually / unexpectedly)

6. Complete: "She actually didn't come!" 她 …… 没来!

7. The forecast said it would snow, and it did. Which word fits? 天气预报说下雪，_____ 下雪了。

- A. 突然
- B. 居然
- C. 果然
- D. 竟然

8. Build: "I actually got such an easy question wrong."

Put in order: 做错了。/ ， 我 / 这么简单的题 / 竟然

9. True or false? 竟然 can introduce a good surprise as well as a bad one. If false, correct it.

10. Your quiet classmate, who never speaks in class, won the speech contest. Use 竟然. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 难道 (rhetorical: don't tell me …?)

11. Challenge: "Don't tell me you've never heard of him?" …… 你没听说过他吗?

12. What does 难道你不饿吗? suggest?

- A. The speaker is hungry.
- B. The speaker thinks you must be hungry.
- C. The speaker thinks you are not hungry.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- D. The speaker is asking for information.

13. Build: “Can he really have forgotten?”

Put in order: 忘了 / 真的 / 吗? / 难道他

14. True or false? 难道 is used to ask for information you don’t have. If false, correct it.

15. Your friend asks whether today’s class is cancelled. The whole school knows it isn’t. Use 难道. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 到底 (on earth / after all)

16. Complete: “What on earth happened?” …… 发生了什么?

17. Which question is correct?

- A. 到底你喜欢她吗?
- B. 你到底喜欢不喜欢她?
- C. 你喜欢她到底吗?
- D. 你喜欢她到底吗?

18. Build: “What on earth is going on?”

Put in order: 回事? / 到底 / 是怎么 / 这

19. True or false? In 他到底是个孩子, 到底 means “after all”. If false, correct it.

20. Your friend has changed his answer three times about tonight’s dinner. Use 到底. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 究竟 (exactly / on earth)

21. Complete a formal question: “What exactly is the reason?” 原因 …… 是什么?

22. Which question is correct?

- A. 他来究竟吗?
- B. 他究竟来不来?
- C. 他来究竟吗?
- D. 究竟他来吗?

23. Build: “What exactly should we do?”

Put in order: 怎么做? / 应该 / 我们 / 究竟

24. True or false? 究竟 sounds more formal than 到底. If false, correct it.

25. A news report on a mysterious light in the sky ends with one question. Use 究竟. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 可 + Adj (emphatic)

26. Complete: “That restaurant is really expensive!” 那家饭馆 …… 贵了！

27. What does 你可别迟到！ mean?

- A. You can’t be late.
- B. Whatever you do, don’t be late!
- C. You may be late.
- D. You were late again.

28. Build: “This film is really interesting.”

Put in order: 这个电影 / 了。/ 可 / 有意思

29. True or false? In 我想去，可没时间, 可 means “but”. If false, correct it.

30. A friend from the south asks whether Harbin in winter is really as cold as people say. Use 可 + Adj. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 又 + 不 / 没 (emphatic negation)

31. What does 又 add in 我又不是小孩子！？

- A. emphasis rejecting an assumption
- B. a time in the past
- C. again
- D. both … and

32. Complete: “Don’t blame her – it’s not like she was late.” 别怪她，她 …… 没迟到。

33. Build: “He’s not going to eat you.”

Put in order: 又 / 吃了你。/ 不会 / 他

34. True or false? 并不 is calmer and more written than 又不. If false, correct it.

35. Your roommate asks you, again, to wash his dishes. Use 又 + 不 / 没. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 差不多 (almost / about the same)

36. Build: “I’m about as tall as my older brother.”

Put in order: 我哥哥 / 差不多 / 我跟 / 高。

37. Complete: “It’s almost twelve o’clock.” …… 十二点了。

38. Match each sentence to its meaning.

- (1) 这两件衣服差不多。
- (2) 差不多八点了。
- (3) 作业写得差不多了。
- (4) 差不多就行了。
- A. The two items are about the same.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. It's almost eight.
- C. That's good enough.
- D. The homework is nearly done.

39. Which says "I almost missed the train (but I caught it)"?

- A. 我跟火车差不多。
- B. 我赶上火车差不多。
- C. 我差不多赶上火车了。
- D. 我差点儿没赶上火车。

40. True or false? 我差不多迟到 is the normal way to say "I was nearly late". If false, correct it.

41. You compare two phones in a shop. Say in Chinese that they are about the same, and that you waited almost half an hour for the shop assistant. Write both sentences. Use 差不多. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. 差点 (almost / nearly)

42. Complete: "I nearly forgot your birthday!" 我 …… 忘了你的生日!

43. What does 他差点儿没考上大学 mean?

- A. He didn't try.
- B. He nearly passed but failed.
- C. He nearly failed but got in.
- D. He passed easily.

44. True or false? 我差点儿摔倒 and 我差点儿没摔倒 mean the same. If false, correct it.

45. Build: "I nearly missed the train."

Put in order: 我 / 差点儿 / 火车。/ 没赶上

46. You slipped on the ice outside your building but grabbed the railing just in time. Use 差点. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 10. 够 (enough / sufficient)

47. Complete: "Is there enough money?" 钱 …… 不够?

48. Which says "This water isn't enough to drink"?

- A. 这些水不够喝。
- B. 这些水不喝够。
- C. 这些水喝不够。
- D. 这些水够不喝。

49. Build: "The money is enough to buy one ticket."

Put in order: 钱 / 买一张票。/ 够

50. True or false? 足够 is more formal than 够. If false, correct it.

51. You invited eight friends, but only cooked for four. Use 够. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 11. 甚至 (even / to the point that)

52. Complete: "He works so hard he even works at weekends." 他工作很努力，…… 周末也工作。

53. Where does 甚至 fit best? A 这个地方 B 夏天热，C 春天也热，D 冬天也不冷。

- A. A
- B. D
- C. B
- D. C

54. Build: "He even wrote his own name wrong."

Put in order: 写错了。 / 都 / 连自己的名字 / 他甚至

55. True or false? 甚至 can join two clauses, as in 他不说话，甚至不看我. If false, correct it.

56. Your sister has started a new job and works from morning till night. Use 甚至. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 12. 就 (only / just – small quantity)

57. Complete: "Only two people came." …… 两个人来了。

58. In 他六点就起床了, what does 就 mean?

- A. also
- B. only
- C. as early as
- D. not until

59. Build: "I've only been once."

Put in order: 一次。 / 我 / 去过 / 就

60. True or false? 他才十岁 sounds more surprised than 他就十岁. If false, correct it.

61. Your friend asks to borrow money for lunch, but your wallet is almost empty. Use 就. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 13. 也都 (also all of them)

62. Complete: "We are all teachers too." 我们 …… 都是老师。

63. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他们喜欢也都唱歌。
- B. 他们也都喜欢唱歌。

- C. 也他们都喜欢唱歌。
- D. 他们都也喜欢唱歌。

64. Build: "They don't know either (none of them)."

Put in order: 不 / 也都 / 知道。/ 他们

65. True or false? 都也 and 也都 are both correct. If false, correct it.

66. Your class went to the museum; you find out the class next door all went as well. Use 也都. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 14. 尤其 (especially)

67. Complete: "He likes sport, especially football." 他喜欢运动，…… 是踢足球。

68. Build: "I especially like autumn."

Put in order: 喜欢 / 秋天。/ 尤其 / 我

69. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我喜欢中国菜，尤其是饺子。
- B. 尤其是饺子，我喜欢中国菜。
- C. 我喜欢尤其是中国菜饺子。

70. True or false? 特别 can mean "very" as well as "especially", but 尤其 only means "especially". If false, correct it.

71. Choose the best word: "This film is really good." 这部电影 _____ 好看。

- A. 尤其
- B. 尤其是
- C. 特别

72. A new classmate asks what you like to eat and do. Answer with two sentences, each using 尤其 – one with 尤其是 + noun, one with 尤其 + verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 15. 稍微 (slightly / a little)

73. Complete: "Today is a little warmer than yesterday." 今天比昨天稍微暖和 ……。

74. Build: "Please wait a moment."

Put in order: 等 / 一下。/ 请 / 稍微

75. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 这个贵稍微一点儿。
- B. 这个贵稍微一点儿。
- C. 这个稍微贵一点儿。

76. You are complaining: "This dish is a bit too salty." Which fits best?

- A. 这个菜稍微咸一点儿。

- B. 这个菜有点儿咸。

77. True or false? 你能稍微说慢一点儿吗? is a polite request. If false, correct it.

78. In a shop: the shoes you tried are a little too small and a bit expensive. Ask for a slightly bigger pair, and ask the assistant to wait a moment. Use 稍微. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 16. 几乎 (almost / hardly)

79. Complete: "He runs almost every day." 他 …… 每天都跑步。

80. Build: "He hardly slept last night."

Put in order: 几乎 / 昨天 / 睡觉。/ 没 / 他

81. You caught the train with two seconds to spare. Which says "I nearly missed the train"?

- A. 我差不多赶上火车。
- B. 我差点儿没赶上火车。
- C. 我几乎每天坐火车。

82. True or false? 这两件衣服几乎。is a correct way to say "These two pieces of clothing are about the same." If false, correct it.

83. What does 我几乎不喝咖啡 mean?

- A. I hardly ever drink coffee.
- B. I drink a lot of coffee.
- C. I almost drank coffee.

84. Describe your habits to a new friend: one thing you do almost every day, and one thing you almost never do. Use 几乎. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 17. 偶尔 (once in a while)

85. Complete: "I go to the cinema once in a while." 我 …… 去电影院。

86. Put the words from MOST often to LEAST often.

Put in order: 从来不 / 有时候 / 经常 / 总是 / 偶尔

87. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 偶尔我打篮球偶尔。
- B. 我偶尔打篮球。
- C. 我打篮球偶尔。

88. "I went to Shanghai once last year." Which is right?

- A. 去年我去过一次上海。
- B. 去年我偶尔去过上海。

89. True or false? 偶尔 means something happens more often than 有时候. If false,

correct it.

90. Talk about your weekends: one thing you often do, one thing you do once in a while, and one thing you never do. Use 偶尔. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 18. 至少 and 最多 (at least / at most)

91. Complete: "This dish takes at least an hour to cook." 做这个菜 …… 要一个小时。

92. "I'll wait ten minutes for you, at most." 我 _____ 等你十分钟。

- A. 至少
- B. 最多

93. Build: "We lost, but at least we tried our best."

Put in order: 我们努力了。 / 但 / 虽然输了， / 至少

94. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 来了一百人至少。
- B. 来了至少一百人以上。
- C. 来了至少一百人。

95. True or false? 最少 can also mean "at least". If false, correct it.

96. A friend asks about preparing for the HSK 4 exam. Give advice with 至少 (how much to study) and 最多 (how long to rest). Use 至少 and 最多. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 19. 还是 + Verb (had better)

97. Suggest: "It's raining; we'd better stay home." 下雨了，我们 …… 在家吧。

98. In which sentence does 还是 mean "had better"?

- A. 我们还是打车吧。
- B. 你去还是不去?
- C. 他是老师还是学生?
- D. 你喝茶还是咖啡?

99. Build: "I thought it over, and I'm not going after all."

Put in order: 我还是 / 不去了。 / 想了想 / ，

100. True or false? 还是 here suggests the speaker considered other options. If false, correct it.

101. You are about to drive to the airport, but the radio says the motorway is blocked. Use 还是 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 20. 最好 (had best / it's best to)

102. Advise: "You'd best bring a coat." 你 …… 带一件外套。

103. Which says "You'd better not drive tonight"?

- A. 你不最好今晚开车。
- B. 你今晚最好别开车。
- C. 你今晚别最好开车。
- D. 你今晚开车最好别。

104. Build: "It's best to book in advance."

Put in order: 订票。 / 提前 / 最好

105. True or false? In 他是我最好的朋友, 最好 means "had better". If false, correct it.

106. You have a bad cold and ask the doctor what to do. Use 最好. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 21. 千万 (be sure to / whatever you do)

107. Warn: "Whatever you do, don't be late!" 你 …… 别迟到!

108. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他昨天千万没来。
- B. 千万你别去。
- C. 你别千万去。
- D. 你千万要注意身体。

109. Build: "Whatever you do, don't tell anyone about this."

Put in order: 告诉别人。 / 这件事 / 不要 / 千万

110. True or false? 千万 is mainly used to warn against something going wrong. If false, correct it.

111. Your friend is flying abroad tomorrow, and you remember how forgetful she is. Use 千万. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 22. 只好 (have no choice but to)

112. Complete: "The lift is broken, so we have to take the stairs." 电梯坏了，我们 …… 走楼梯。

113. Which sentence is natural?

- A. 我明天再来只好。
- B. 商店关门了，只好我再来明天。
- C. 只好我明天再来。
- D. 商店关门了，我只好明天再来。

114. Build: "He can't cook, so he has to eat instant noodles."

Put in order: ， / 只好 / 他不会做饭 / 吃方便面。

115. True or false? 不得不 sounds stronger than 只好. If false, correct it.

116. You leave a party at midnight and the last bus left ten minutes ago. Taxis are all taken. Use 只好. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 23. 不得不 (have no choice but to)

117. Complete: "The shop closed, so we had to find another one." 商店关门了，我们 …… 去找别的店。

118. What does 我不得不走了 mean?

- A. I can't leave.
- B. I have to leave now.
- C. I don't want to leave.
- D. I mustn't leave.

119. Build: "Because he had no money, he had to sell his car."

Put in order: 卖掉了车。/ 不得不 / ， 他 / 因为没钱

120. True or false? 不得不 can mean "must not". If false, correct it.

121. Your friend has a high fever on the morning of an important exam. Say in Chinese what he has to do, then write it. Use 不得不. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 24. 尽量 (as much as possible)

122. Complete: "Please speak Chinese as much as possible." 请 …… 说汉语。

123. Build: "Try not to use your phone at night."

Put in order: 尽量 / 别 / 晚上 / 玩手机。

124. "I've done my best." Which is right?

- A. 我尽力已经了。
- B. 我已经尽力了。
- C. 我已经力尽了量。

125. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我尽量早点儿来。
- B. 我早点儿尽量来。
- C. 尽量我早点儿来。

126. True or false? 我尽量不喝咖啡 means "I try not to drink coffee". If false, correct it.

127. Your doctor gives you health advice. Write what the doctor says: two things to do as much as possible and one thing to avoid, using 尽量. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 25. 刚 + Verb (just did)

128. Complete: “I’ve just finished eating.” 我 …… 吃完饭。

129. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他刚走了了。
- B. 刚他走。
- C. 他刚走。
- D. 他走刚。

130. Build: “I’d only just got home when it started to rain.”

Put in order: ， 就 / 我刚 / 到家 / 下雨了。

131. True or false? 他刚来北京两个月 means he has only been in Beijing for two months. If false, correct it.

132. Your mum calls as you walk out of the arrivals hall. Use 刚 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 26. 本来 (originally / at first)

133. Complete: “I originally planned to leave on Monday.” 我 …… 打算星期一走。

134. You open the door and find your old friend. Which fits? “_____ 是你！”

- A. 本来
- B. 原来
- C. 后来
- D. 从来

135. Build: “I didn’t really want to come, but my friend insisted.”

Put in order: 不想来 / 我本来 / ， 可是 / 朋友一定要我来。

136. True or false? In 学生本来就应该学习, 本来就 means “of course, naturally”. If false, correct it.

137. You were going to spend the holiday in Yunnan, but then your cousin invited you to Hainan. Use 本来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 27. 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

138. Complete: “Let’s have a look first, then decide.” 我们先看看，…… 决定。

139. Which says “Wait until the rain stops before you leave”?

- A. 再等雨停了走。
- B. 等雨停了又走。
- C. 雨停了等再走。
- D. 等雨停了再走。

140. Build: “Let’s eat first; we can talk about the rest later.”

Put in order: 以后再说。/ 别的事 / 先吃饭 / ，

141. True or false? 先 … 再 … is the usual way to describe what you did yesterday. If false, correct it.

142. You are explaining to a new colleague how to set up their work account. Use 先 … , 再 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 28. 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

143. Complete: "I've never eaten durian." 我从来没吃 …… 榴莲。

144. Which says "She never eats meat" (a personal rule)?

- A. 她从来没吃肉了。
- B. 她从来没吃过肉。
- C. 她从来不吃肉。
- D. 她不从来吃肉。

145. Build: "He never drinks alcohol."

Put in order: 不喝 / 他 / 从来 / 酒。

146. True or false? 从来 is the usual word for "always" in positive sentences. If false, correct it.

147. Your grandfather is eighty and proud of one thing about his health. Use 从来 + 不 / 没. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 29. 正好 (just right / exactly)

148. Build: "You've come at just the right moment."

Put in order: 正好。/ 来得 / 你

149. Complete: "I happen to have an umbrella; let's share it." 我 …… 带了伞，一起用吧。

150. What does 一共正好五十块 mean?

- A. nearly fifty yuan
- B. about fifty yuan altogether
- C. exactly fifty yuan altogether
- D. more than fifty yuan

151. Your friend phones and asks what you are doing. You are eating. Which reply is right?

- A. 我吃饭正好。
- B. 我正在吃饭。
- C. 我正好吃饭。

152. True or false? In 大小正好 you can use 刚好 instead of 正好. If false, correct it.

153. Your friend knocks on your door just as you were going to call her. Then make a second sentence with 正好 + a number (a price or a time). Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 30. 结果 (as a result / in the end)

154. Complete: "I didn't bring an umbrella, and in the end I got soaked." 我没带伞，…… 被雨淋湿了。

155. In 比赛的结果是二比一, what is 结果?

- A. a noun meaning "result"
- B. an adverb meaning "finally"
- C. a verb meaning "finish"
- D. a conjunction meaning "so"

156. Build: "He went to bed late, and as a result he was late today."

Put in order: 他睡得很晚 / 结果 / 今天迟到了。/ ，

157. True or false? 结果 is used for a result that has actually happened. If false, correct it.

158. You prepared sandwiches all morning for a picnic. At noon it started to pour. Use 结果. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 31. 顺便 (while you're at it)

159. Complete: "When you go to the supermarket, buy me some milk while you're there." 你去超市的时候，…… 帮我买一瓶牛奶吧。

160. Build: "By the way, are you free tomorrow?"

Put in order: 你 / 明天 / 顺便问一下，/ 有空吗?

161. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 顺便，我去邮局。
- B. 我去邮局，顺便买了几张邮票。
- C. 我去邮局，买了几张邮票顺便。

162. "Also, there's one more thing I want to say." (a separate point) Which word fits? _____，我还想说一件事。

- A. 另外
- B. 顺便

163. True or false? 顺便 adds a small job that takes little extra effort. If false, correct it.

164. Your friend is going to the library. Ask them to do two small things for you while they're there, using 顺便. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 32. 忽然 vs 突然 (suddenly)

165. Complete: "We were having dinner when suddenly the lights went out." 我们正在吃饭，灯 …… 灭了。

166. "This news is so sudden." Which is right?

- A. 这个消息太忽然了。

- B. 这个消息太突然了。

167. “a sudden change” – which is the usual way to say it?

- A. 突然的变化
- B. 忽然的变化

168. Build: “Suddenly it started pouring outside.”

Put in order: 大雨。 / 外面 / 忽然， / 下起了

169. True or false? 马上 means “suddenly”. If false, correct it.

170. Tell a short story in two sentences: you were walking home when something unexpected happened. Use 忽然 once and 突然 as an adjective once. Use 忽然 or 突然. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 33. 重新 vs 再 (start over / once more)

171. Complete: “Lets start over from the beginning.” 我们 …… 开始吧。

172. “Come again tomorrow.” Which is natural?

- A. 明天重新来吧。
- B. 明天再来吧。

173. “He was late again (yesterday).” 他昨天 _____ 迟到了。

- A. 重新
- B. 再
- C. 又

174. Build: “Please do it all over again.”

Put in order: 请 / 重新 / 一遍。 / 再做

175. True or false? 重新写 means you write it again from the start. If false, correct it.

176. Your computer crashed and you lost your homework. Tell a friend what you have to do, using 重新 once and 再 once. Use 重新 or 再. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 34. 看来 (it seems / in one’s view)

177. The restaurant is empty at seven: “It looks like the food here isn’t very good.” …… 这儿的菜不太好吃。

178. Which says “She looks very young”?

- A. 她看起来很年轻。
- B. 在她看来很年轻。
- C. 看来她很年轻。
- D. 她很年轻看来。

179. Build: “In my view, this approach isn’t very good.”

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Put in order: 这个办法 / 在我看来 / ， / 不太好。

180. True or false? 看来 usually comes after the conclusion it introduces. If false, correct it.

181. The sky turns grey and the wind picks up while you are hiking. Use 看来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 35. 恐怕 (I'm afraid / probably)

182. Soften the news: "I'm afraid the tickets are sold out." …… 票已经卖完了。

183. Which says "My little sister is scared of the dark"?

- A. 恐怕妹妹黑。
- B. 妹妹恐怕黑了。
- C. 妹妹怕黑。
- D. 妹妹恐怕黑。

184. Build: "It'll probably rain tomorrow, I'm afraid."

Put in order: 下雨。/ 明天要 / 恐怕

185. True or false? 恐怕 usually goes with welcome news. If false, correct it.

186. You are stuck in traffic and the train leaves in ten minutes. Use 恐怕. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 36. 大概 and 也许 (probably / maybe)

187. Complete: "There were about thirty people." …… 有三十个人。

188. Build: "He's probably home by now."

Put in order: 大概 / 他 / 已经 / 到家了。

189. "It's very likely to rain tomorrow." Which is right?

- A. 明天很大概下雨。
- B. 明天很也许下雨。
- C. 明天很可能下雨。

190. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 大概三十个人。
- B. 三十个人大概。

191. True or false? 也许 sounds less sure than 大概. If false, correct it.

192. Your teacher is late for class. Make two guesses: one with 大概 and one with 也许. Then say roughly how long you have waited with 大概. Use 大概 and 也许. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 37. 估计 (I reckon, to estimate)

193. Complete: "I reckon he's not coming today." 我 …… 他今天不会来了。

194. "I reckon there are over two hundred people." Which is right?

- A. 我看来有两百多人。
- B. 我估计有两百多人。

195. You are completely sure he will come. Which do you say?

- A. 我估计他会来。
- B. 他一定会来。

196. Build: "He's probably asleep already."

Put in order: 估计 / 已经 / 他 / 睡了。

197. True or false? 看来 is used for a guess from something you can see right now. If false, correct it.

198. You are organising a class party. Use 估计 twice: once to guess how many people will come, once to guess how long it will take to prepare. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

199. Choose 竟然 or 原来: 他学了一年中文，…… 能看中文报纸了！(you are surprised) / …… 你会说中文！(you suddenly understand)

200. Choose 差点 or 差不多: 我 …… 迟到了。(it nearly happened) / 我们俩 …… 高。(about the same)

201. Choose 只好 or 最好: 外面下大雨，我们 …… 在家看电影。/ 你 …… 早点儿睡觉。

202. Which sentence means "Whatever you do, don't be late"?

- A. 你千万别迟到。
- B. 你恐怕别迟到。
- C. 你到底别迟到。

203. Choose 本来 or 从来: 我 …… 想去，后来没时间了。/ 他 …… 不喝咖啡。

204. Find and fix the problem. You planned to walk, but it rained, so you took the bus. A classmate writes 我只好想走路去，可是下雨了. Correct the sentence.

205. Use it yourself. Say you nearly missed the train, and that it turned out your friend had already bought you a ticket.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 原来 (so it turns out / all along)

1. 原来

原来 announces a discovery.

2. A. original

原来 + 的 + noun = the original plan.

3. 原来下雪了，难怪这么冷。

原来 + discovery, 难怪 + what it explains.

4. True.

以为 marks the mistaken belief; 原来 the truth.

5. Model answer: 原来他牙疼，难怪不吃饭。

Check your answer:

- At the start of a clause, 原来 reveals a discovery: 原来是这样！ – "So that's how it is!"
- Before a noun (with 的) or describing the past, it means "original(ly)": 原来的计划 – "the original plan".

■ 2. 竟然 (actually / unexpectedly)

6. 竟然

竟然 marks a surprise.

7. C. 果然

果然 means "just as expected": the forecast said snow, and it did snow. 竟然 and 居然 mark surprise, and 突然 means "suddenly".

8. 这么简单的题，我竟然做错了。

Subject + 竟然 + verb.

9. True.

It marks any outcome that goes against expectation.

10. Model answer: 他竟然得了第一名！

Check your answer:

- Use 竟然 only when the outcome is unexpected; for a plain fact, leave it out.
- It is an adverb: 他竟然来了, not 竟然他来了 in most speech.

■ 3. 难道 (rhetorical: don't tell me ...?)

11. 难道

难道 … 吗 makes a rhetorical question.

12. B. The speaker thinks you must be hungry.

A negative 难道 question implies the positive.

13. 难道他真的忘了吗?

难道 + statement + 吗?

14. False.

It challenges; the speaker already believes the answer.

15. Model answer: 难道你不知道吗?

Check your answer:

- 难道 usually doesn't ask for information: the speaker expects the answer, or is surprised. Use it to challenge or show surprise.
- 难道 sits at the start or after the subject: 你难道不知道吗? ("Don't tell me you don't know?") is also correct.

■ 4. 到底 (on earth / after all)

16. 到底

到底 + question word.

17. B. 你到底喜欢不喜欢她?

到底 takes an A-not-A or a question word, never 吗.

18. 这到底是怎么回事?

Subject + 到底 + question.

19. True.

In statements, 到底是 = after all.

20. Model answer: 你到底来不来?

Check your answer:

- 到底 goes with a question word or A-not-A: 你到底去不去? ("Are you going or not, after all?"); 你到底去吗? sounds odd.
- Put 到底 before the question part, after the subject: 你到底在哪儿? – "Where on earth are you?"

■ 5. 究竟 (exactly / on earth)

21. 究竟

究竟 + question word.

22. B. 他究竟来不来?

究竟 needs A-not-A or a question word.

23. 我们究竟应该怎么做?

Subject + 究竟 + question.

24. True.

It suits reports and serious discussion.

25. Model answer: 那究竟是什么?

Check your answer:

- Use a question word or A-not-A: 你究竟同意不同意? ("Do you agree or not, after all?"); 你究竟同意吗? sounds odd.
- Put 究竟 after the topic and before the question part: 原因究竟是什么? – "What exactly is the reason?"

■ 6. 可 + Adj (emphatic)

26. 可

可 + Adj + 了 for spoken emphasis.

27. B. Whatever you do, don't be late!

可 before 别 adds urgency: 你可别迟到! "Whatever you do, don't be late!" It is a strong warning, not a statement about what is possible.

28. 这个电影可有意思了。

可 + Adj + 了.

29. True.

At the start of a clause, 可 can be short for 可是.

30. Model answer: 哈尔滨的冬天可冷了!

Check your answer:

- Use 可 … 了 in conversation; in writing choose 非常 or 十分.
- 可 + Adj usually needs 了 or 呢 at the end: 可冷了, not just 可冷.

■ 7. 又 + 不 / 没 (emphatic negation)

31. A. emphasis rejecting an assumption

又 + 不 pushes back: "I'm not a child, you know!"

32. 又

又 + 没 for an emphatic denial.

33. 他又不会吃了你。

Subject + 又 + 不会 + verb.

34. True.

又不 is emotional speech; 并不 states a correction calmly.

35. Model answer: 我又不是你的服务员!

Check your answer:

- In 又不 / 又没, 又 is not “again”; it adds force to the denial.
- Keep it in speech; in neutral statements, plain 不 / 没 is enough: 他没做错.

■ 8. 差不多 (almost / about the same)

36. 我跟我哥哥差不多高。

A 跟 B 差不多 + adjective.

37. 差不多

差不多 + time = almost.

38. (1) A: 这两件衣服差不多。= The two items are about the same.; (2) B: 差不多八点了。= It’s almost eight.; (3) D: 作业写得差不多了。= The homework is nearly done.; (4) C: 差不多就行了。= That’s good enough.

Where 差不多 stands decides its meaning.

39. D. 我差点儿没赶上火车。

Something that nearly happened takes 差点儿.

40. False.

Use 差点儿: 我差点儿迟到。差不多 is for amounts and similarity.

41. Model answer: 这两个手机差不多。我差不多等了半个小时。

Check your answer:

- I used A 跟 B 差不多 or “these two … 差不多 ” for the comparison.
- I put 差不多 straight before the amount of time.
- I did not use 差不多 for something that nearly happened.
- I said both sentences aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 9. 差点 (almost / nearly)

42. 差点儿

差点儿 + verb = it almost happened.

43. C. He nearly failed but got in.

Getting in is wanted, so 差点儿没 = nearly failed (but succeeded).

44. True.

Falling is unwanted, so both mean “I nearly fell (but didn’t)”.

45. 我差点儿没赶上火车。

差点儿没 + wanted result = nearly failed to.

46. Model answer: 我差点儿摔倒。

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- Wanted result: 差点儿考上 = almost got in (but didn't); 差点儿没考上 = nearly didn't get in (but did).
- Unwanted result: 差点儿撞车 and 差点儿没撞车 both = nearly crashed (but didn't).

■ 10. 够 (enough / sufficient)

47. 够

够不够 asks whether it is enough.

48. A. 这些水不够喝。

不够 + verb = not enough to.

49. 钱够买一张票。

Noun + 够 + verb phrase.

50. True.

足够 (的) = sufficient, often in writing.

51. Model answer: 菜不够了，我再做两个吧。

Check your answer:

- 够 normally follows the thing that is enough: 钱够了, 时间不够.
- "Enough to do" puts the verb after 够: 够吃, 够用, not 吃够 (that means "have had one's fill").

■ 11. 甚至 (even / to the point that)

52. 甚至

甚至 introduces the extreme point.

53. B. D

甚至 goes before the last, strongest item: 甚至冬天也不冷.

54. 他甚至连自己的名字都写错了。

甚至 + 连 … 都 + verb.

55. True.

It raises the second clause to a stronger point.

56. Model answer: 她太忙了，甚至没时间吃饭。

Check your answer:

- Put the 甚至 item last, as the strongest point; 甚至 does not introduce an ordinary item.
- 甚至 is more formal than 连 … 都 alone; the two often appear together.

■ 12. 就 (only / just – small quantity)

57. 就

就 + number = only.

58. C. as early as

Time + 就 + verb = as early as; this is not the "only" 就.

59. 我就去过一次。

Subject + 就 + verb + 过 + 一次.

60. True.

才 + number adds surprise that it is so little.

61. Model answer: 我就有十块钱。

Check your answer:

- Before a number or a person, 就 means "only". Between a time/condition and a verb it means "then / as early as": 六点就起床了 – "I got up as early as six o'clock."
- Stress helps in speech: 就 is said with emphasis when it means "only".

■ 13. 也都 (also all of them)

62. 也

也 comes before 都.

63. B. 他们也都喜欢唱歌。

他们也都喜欢唱歌 is right: when 也 and 都 are both used, 也 comes first, and both go after the subject and before the verb.

64. 他们也都不知道。

也都 + 不 + verb.

65. False.

False. When both appear, the order is 也都: 他们也都来了 "They all came too." 都也 is not used.

66. Model answer: 他们也都去了博物馆。

Check your answer:

- Say 也都, never 都也: 我们也都去, not 我们都也去.
- Both adverbs come after the subject and before the verb or 不 / 没.

■ 14. 尤其 (especially)

67. 尤其

General fact first, then 尤其是 + the strongest case.

68. 我尤其喜欢秋天。

Subject + 尤其 + verb.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

69. A. 我喜欢中国菜，尤其是饺子。

The group (中国菜) comes first; 尤其是 picks out the top one.

70. True.

特别好 = really good. 尤其 always singles out one case from a group.

71. C. 特别

There is no group here, so 特别 (very) fits.

72. Model answer: 我喜欢吃水果，尤其是西瓜。我喜欢运动，尤其喜欢打篮球。

Check your answer:

- In each sentence the general part comes first.
- I used 尤其是 + noun once and 尤其 + verb once.
- I said them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 15. 稍微 (slightly / a little)

73. 一点儿

稍微 + adjective needs a small amount after it.

74. 请稍微等一下。

稍微 + verb + 一下.

75. C. 这个稍微贵一点儿。

稍微 goes before the adjective, 一点儿 after it.

76. B. 这个菜有点儿咸。

有点儿 + adjective is the usual way to complain. 稍微 … 一点儿 compares or asks for a small change.

77. True.

稍微 + verb + 一点儿 / 一下 softens a request.

78. Model answer: 这双有点儿小，有稍微大一点儿的吗？请稍微等一下，我再试试。

Check your answer:

- I used 稍微 + adjective + 一点儿 and 稍微 + verb + 一下.
- 稍微 comes before the adjective or verb, 一点儿 / 一下 after.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 16. 几乎 (almost / hardly)

79. 几乎

几乎 + 每天 + 都 = almost every day.

80. 他昨天几乎没睡觉。

几乎 comes before 没 + verb.

81. B. 我差点儿没赶上火车。

A close call that did not happen takes 差点儿.

82. False.

几乎 cannot stand alone. Say 这两件衣服差不多.

83. A. I hardly ever drink coffee.

几乎 + 不 = hardly, almost never.

84. Model answer: 我几乎每天都看书，可是我几乎不看电视。

Check your answer:

- I used 几乎 + 每天 + 都 once and 几乎 + 不 once.
- 几乎 comes after the subject, before the verb or 不.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 17. 偶尔 (once in a while)

85. 偶尔

Subject + 偶尔 + verb.

86. 总是经常有时候偶尔从来不

偶尔 is rarer than 有时候 but still happens, unlike 从来不.

87. B. 我偶尔打篮球。

偶尔 goes after the subject, before the verb.

88. A. 去年我去过一次上海。

One single time is 一次. 偶尔 describes a habit that happens now and then.

89. False.

It is the other way round. 偶尔 is rarer than 有时候.

90. Model answer: 周末我经常睡懒觉，偶尔去爬山，从来不去酒吧。

Check your answer:

- I used 经常, 偶尔 and 从来不, each before the verb.
- The three activities fit their frequency words.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 18. 至少 and 最多 (at least / at most)

91. 至少

至少 + amount = at least.

92. B. 最多

最多 = at most.

93. 虽然输了，但至少我们努力了。

至少 + sentence = the one good point.

94. C. 来了至少一百人。

至少 goes before the number, without 以上.

95. True.

最少也要一个小时 = it takes at least an hour.

96. Model answer: 你每天至少要学一个小时。周末最多休息一天。

Check your answer:

- 至少 and 最多 come before the verb or number.
- I didn't add 以上 or 左右.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 19. 还是 + Verb (had better)

97. 还是

还是 + verb + 吧 = had better.

98. A. 我们还是打车吧。

The others are choice questions where 还是 = or.

99. 想了想，我还是不去了。

Reflection, then subject + 还是 + decision.

100. True.

It marks a choice reached after weighing alternatives.

101. Model answer: 我们还是坐地铁吧。

Check your answer:

- In a question, 还是 = "or": 你去还是我去? ("Are you going or am I going?") Here it is a statement or suggestion, so no question mark.
- 还是 + 不 … 了 reverses a plan: 我还是不去了 – "I'm not going after all."

■ 20. 最好 (had best / it's best to)

102. 最好

最好 + verb = had best.

103. B. 你今晚最好别开车。

Time + 最好别 + verb; 不最好 is wrong.

104. 最好提前订票。

最好 + verb phrase.

105. False.

False. Before 的 + noun, 最好 is "best": 我最好的朋友 "my best friend". Only before a verb does 最好 mean "had better": 你最好早点儿走.

106. Model answer: 你最好多喝水，早点儿睡觉。

Check your answer:

- "You'd better not" = 最好别 / 最好不要: 最好别去, not 不最好去.
- 最好 + Verb gives advice; 最好的 + noun means "the best": 最好的朋友 – "The best friend."

■ 21. 千万 (be sure to / whatever you do)

107. 千万

千万 + 别 = a strong warning.

108. D. 你千万要注意身体。

千万 belongs in advice; it goes after the subject, before 要 / 别.

109. 这件事千万不要告诉别人。

Topic + 千万不要 + verb.

110. True.

It is an urgent warning or reminder.

111. Model answer: 你千万别忘了带护照!

Check your answer:

- Use 千万 in advice or requests to someone, not to describe facts: 他千万没来 is wrong.
- 千万 goes after the subject, before 别 / 不要 / 要 or the verb: 你千万别忘了, 路上千万注意安全.

■ 22. 只好 (have no choice but to)

112. 只好

Obstacle, then subject + 只好 + verb.

113. D. 商店关门了，我只好明天再来。

Reason first, then subject + 只好 + verb.

114. 他不会做饭，只好吃方便面。

Reason + 只好 + verb phrase.

115. True.

不得不 stresses being forced; 只好 sounds resigned.

116. Model answer: 没有车了，我们只好走回家。

Check your answer:

- The obstacle usually comes before 只好: 电梯坏了，我们只好走楼梯.
- Place 只好 after the subject: 我只好走路, not 只好我走路 in most speech.

■ 23. 不得不 (have no choice but to)

117. 不得不

Forced by the situation: 不得不 (or 只好).

118. B. I have to leave now.

不得不 = must, forced by the situation.

119. 因为没钱，他不得不卖掉了车。

Reason, then subject + 不得不 + verb.

120. False.

It means "have no choice but to"; "must not" is 不能.

121. Model answer: 他发烧了，不得不请假。

Check your answer:

- I gave the reason first, then subject + 不得不 + verb.
- My sentence means "has to", not "must not".
- I tried a second sentence with a different reason (rain, no money, a closed shop).
- I said both sentences aloud before comparing with the model.

■ 24. 尽量 (as much as possible)

122. 尽量

尽量 + verb = as much as possible.

123. 晚上尽量别玩手机。

尽量 + 别 + verb = try not to.

124. B. 我已经尽力了。

The usual way to say "I've done my best" is 我已经尽力了.

125. A. 我尽量早点儿来。

尽量 goes after the subject, before the verb phrase.

126. True.

尽量不 + verb = try not to.

127. Model answer: 你要尽量早点儿睡觉，尽量多喝水，尽量别吃太甜的东西。

Check your answer:

- Each 尽量 comes before the verb.
- I used 尽量别 / 尽量不 once.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 25. 刚 + Verb (just did)

128. 刚

刚 + verb = have just done.

129. C. 他刚走。

他刚走 is right: 刚 is an adverb, so it goes after the subject and before the verb. It cannot start the sentence or follow the verb, and 了 is not doubled.

130. 我刚到家，就下雨了。

刚 + event 1, 就 + event 2.

131. True.

刚 + verb + duration = only recently.

132. Model answer: 我刚下飞机，一会儿给你打电话。

Check your answer:

- 刚 goes right before the verb, after the subject: 我刚到, not 刚我到. (刚才 can start a sentence.)
- A 刚 sentence usually needs no 了: 他刚走 already says it has happened.

■ 26. 本来 (originally / at first)

133. 本来

本来 = originally (before a change).

134. B. 原来

A discovery takes 原来; 本来 cannot announce one.

135. 我本来不想来，可是朋友一定要我来。

本来 + original wish, 可是 + change.

136. True.

本来就 states something that was always true.

137. Model answer: 我本来想去云南，后来去了海南。

Check your answer:

- **本来就** = "should have been obvious, naturally": 学生本来就应该学习 – "Students are, of course, supposed to study."
- This 本来 has no change of plan; it means the thing was always true.

■ 27. 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

138. 再

先 A，再 B for future steps.

139. D. 等雨停了再走。

等 + condition + 再 + action.

140. 先吃饭，别的事以后再说。

先 + step, 以后再说 postpones the rest.

141. False.

Past sequences use 先 … 然后 … with 了.

142. Model answer: 你先填这张表，再去人事部，然后领电脑。

Check your answer:

- For a past sequence, use 先 … 然后 … with 了: 我先去了银行，然后去了超市 – "I first went to the bank, then went to the supermarket."
- 先 and 再 are adverbs: each comes after the subject, before its verb: 我先走，你再走 – "I will leave first, and then you can leave."

■ 28. 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

143. 过

从来没 + verb + 过 for an experience.

144. C. 她从来不吃肉。

A habit or rule takes 从来不.

145. 他从来不喝酒。

Subject + 从来 + 不 + verb.

146. False.

Use 一直 or 总是 for "always"; 从来 mostly appears with 不 / 没.

147. Model answer: 爷爷从来不抽烟。

Check your answer:

- Habit or choice → 从来不; past experience → 从来没 + V + 过.
- Use 过 to highlight experience in this model. It is not required after every 从来没; the predicate and intended meaning determine the complete phrase.

■ 29. 正好 (just right / exactly)

148. 你来得正好。

Verb + 得 + 正好 = it was done or timed just right.

149. 正好

正好 + verb = happen to (a lucky fit).

150. C. exactly fifty yuan altogether

Before a number, 正好 = exactly. “About fifty” is 五十块左右.

151. B. 我正在吃饭。

正在 = in the middle of doing. 正好 never means that.

152. True.

刚好 and 正好 mean the same in all three uses.

153. Model answer: 你来得正好，我正想给你打电话。这件衣服正好一百块。

Check your answer:

- My first sentence fits the situation (the timing was just right).
- I put 正好 after 来得, or before the verb for “happen to”.
- My second sentence puts 正好 straight before the number and does not add 左右.
- I said both sentences aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 30. 结果 (as a result / in the end)

154. 结果

结果 introduces what actually happened.

155. A. a noun meaning “result”

After 的, 结果 is a noun, “result”: 比赛的结果是二比一 “The result of the match was 2–1.” At the start of a clause, 结果 can also mean “as a result, in the end”.

156. 他睡得很晚，结果今天迟到了。

Cause, then 结果 + outcome.

157. True.

It reports the real outcome, often a surprise.

158. Model answer: 我们准备了一上午，结果下雨了。

Check your answer:

- 结果 reports what actually happened, so it does not fit plans: 如果下雨，我们就不去, not 如果下雨，结果我们不去.
- It usually starts the result clause: …，结果他迟到了.

■ 31. 顺便 (while you’re at it)

159. 顺便

Main action, then 顺便 + the small extra job.

160. 顺便问一下，你明天有空吗?

顺便问一下 = by the way.

161. B. 我去邮局，顺便买了几张邮票。

顺便 goes before the extra action, after the main one.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

162. A. 另外

A separate extra point takes 另外. 顺便 links an extra job to a main action.

163. True.

The main action happens anyway; 顺便 adds something on the way.

164. Model answer: 你去图书馆的时候，顺便帮我还这本书吧，再顺便看看有没有新的杂志。

Check your answer:

- The main action (going to the library) comes first.
- 顺便 comes before each extra job.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 32. 忽然 vs 突然 (suddenly)

165. 忽然

Both 忽然 and 突然 work as adverbs.

166. B. 这个消息太突然了。

Only 突然 is also an adjective that can take 太 / 很.

167. A. 突然的变化

Before a noun, 突然的 is the usual choice.

168. 忽然，外面下起了大雨。

忽然 can start the sentence.

169. False.

马上 = right away, very soon. Suddenly is 忽然 / 突然.

170. Model answer: 我正在走路回家，天忽然下起了大雨。雨来得太突然了，我一点儿准备都没有。

Check your answer:

- 忽然 comes before the verb or starts the sentence.
- 突然 is used once as an adjective (太突然了 / 突然的 …).
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 33. 重新 vs 再 (start over / once more)

171. 重新

重新 = start over.

172. B. 明天再来吧。

A simple next visit is 再.

173. C. 又

It already happened again – 又.

174. 请重新再做一遍。

重新 (from the start) + 再 (again) + verb.

175. True.

重新 = start over, often in a new way.

176. Model answer: 我的电脑坏了，作业都没了，我得重新写。我写完以后再给你打电话吧。

Check your answer:

- 重新 means starting over.
- 再 means "then / once more" for a later action.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 34. 看来 (it seems / in one's view)

177. 看来

An empty restaurant is evidence; 看来 draws the conclusion.

178. A. 她看起来很年轻。

Appearance takes 看起来; 看来 draws a conclusion.

179. 在我看来，这个办法不太好。

在 + person + 看来 introduces an opinion.

180. False.

看来 comes before the conclusion.

181. Model answer: 看来要下雨了，我们回去吧。

Check your answer:

- 看来 reasons from evidence; for how something looks, use 看起来: 他看起来很累 – "He looks tired."
- Put 看来 before the conclusion, not after it: 看来他病了, not 他病了看来.

■ 35. 恐怕 (I'm afraid / probably)

182. 恐怕

恐怕 introduces an unwelcome guess.

183. C. 妹妹怕黑。

Being scared of something is 怕; 恐怕 is a cautious guess.

184. 恐怕明天要下雨。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

恐怕 can start the sentence, before the prediction.

185. False.

It usually softens unwelcome news; 可能 is neutral.

186. Model answer: 恐怕来不及了。

Check your answer:

- 恐怕 is a cautious prediction, not "be scared of": "I'm scared of dogs" is 我怕狗, not 我恐怕狗.
- It usually goes with unwelcome news; for a neutral guess, 可能 is better: 他可能在家 – "He may be at home."

■ 36. 大概 and 也许 (probably / maybe)

187. 大概

Before a number, 大概 = roughly.

188. 他大概已经到家了。

大概 goes before the verb (and before 已经).

189. C. 明天很可能下雨。

Only 可能 can take 很.

190. A. 大概三十个人。

大概 goes before the number.

191. True.

大概 = probably; 也许 = maybe.

192. Model answer: 老师大概堵车了。也许她忘了今天有课。我们大概等了十分钟了。

Check your answer:

- 大概 and 也许 go before the verb.
- I used 大概 once before a number.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 37. 估计 (I reckon, to estimate)

193. 估计

A guess from facts – 估计.

194. B. 我估计有两百多人。

For a rough number, use 估计.

195. B. 他一定会来。

估计 is a guess; for certainty, 一定.

196. 他估计已经睡了。

估计 can go before the verb.

197. True.

看来要下雨了 – the sky tells you.

198. Model answer: 我估计会有三十个人左右来参加。准备吃的和喝的，估计要两个小时。

Check your answer:

- One 估计 gives a number, one gives a time.
- I didn't add 一定 to my guesses.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ Mixed practice

199. 他学了一年中文，竟然能看中文报纸了！原来你会说中文！竟然 shows surprise at something unexpected; 原来 shows you have just found out the truth.

200. 我差点迟到了。我们俩差不多高。差点 is a near miss; 差不多 means about the same or almost all.

201. 外面下大雨，我们只好在家看电影 (no other choice)。你最好早点儿睡觉 (advice).

202. A. 千万 + 别/不要 gives a strong warning.

203. 我本来想去，后来没时间了 (the first plan)。他从来不喝咖啡 (never).

204. The first plan needs 本来, and the forced choice needs 只好: 我本来想走路去，可是下雨了，只好坐公共汽车。

205. Model answer. 我差点没赶上火车。原来朋友已经给我买好票了。差点 is a near miss; 原来 shows what you found out.

Review later. Tomorrow, choose one adverb from each group and make a new sentence with it.

Adverbs with adjectives

HSK 4

挺 + adjective + 的 is the everyday way to say "quite" or "pretty": 挺好的, 挺忙的. It is friendlier and lighter than 很 or 非常, and the 的 at the end is common in speech. For a negative, put 不 after 挺: 挺不容易的.

At a glance

- **1.** 挺 + Adj + 的 – quite / rather: 挺好的，就是离公司有点儿远。
- **2.** 极其 vs 非常, 十分 and 特别 – extremely: 安全问题极其重要。

1. 挺 + Adj + 的 (quite / rather)

Form: 挺 + adjective / feeling verb + (的)

- **挺好的，就是离公司有点儿远。** *Tǐng hǎo de, jiùshì lí gōngsī yǒudiǎnr yuǎn.* – It's pretty nice; it's just a bit far from the office.
- **这儿的菜挺好吃的。** *Zhèr de cài tǐng hǎochī de.* – The food here is pretty good.
- **我挺喜欢这个城市的。** *Wǒ tǐng xǐhuan zhège chéngshì de.* – I quite like this city.
- **他挺会说话的。** *Tā tǐng huì shuōhuà de.* – He's pretty good with words.
- **今天挺冷的，多穿点儿。** *Jīntiān tǐng lěng de, duō chuān diǎnr.* – It's quite cold today; wear a bit more.
- **这个电影挺不错的，你可以去看看。** *Zhège diànyǐng tǐng búcuò de, nǐ kěyǐ qù kànkan.* – This film is pretty good; you could go and see it.

How it works. 挺 *tǐng* means "quite, pretty" in everyday speech. It sits where 很 sits, right before the adjective, and 的 at the end of the clause makes it sound relaxed and friendly. Feeling verbs and skill phrases take it too: 挺喜欢, 挺想去, 挺会做饭.

挺 is softer than 太 …… 了 and warmer than plain 很. That makes it the natural word for a fair, mild opinion, and 挺 …… 的，就是 …… is how people give a compliment with a small "but": the first half is positive, the 就是 half names one small problem.

很好	挺好的	太好了!
neutral; the default "good"	friendly, casual: "pretty good"	strong; excited, or "too" with a problem
这个办法很好。	这个办法挺好的。	你来了，太好了!

Watch out

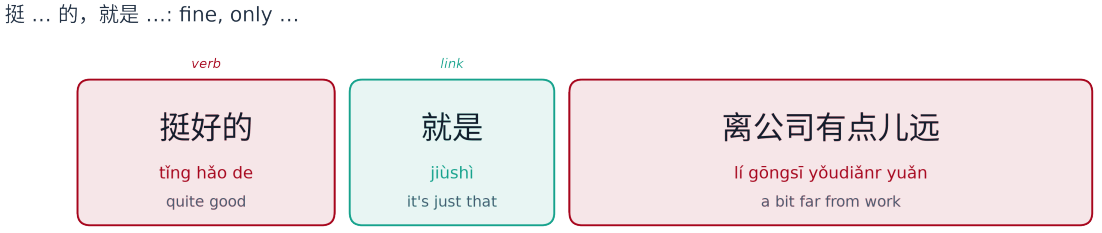
- "Not very" is 不太 or 不怎么: *wrong:* 不挺好 → 不太好. You can put 不 *after* 挺: 挺不错 (quite good), 挺不方便的 (quite inconvenient).
- 挺 already means "quite"; do not add 很 or 非常: *wrong:* 挺很好 → 挺好的.
- 挺 is spoken. In an essay or a formal email, use 比较 or 很: 这个方法比较有效.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

In a passage

> 我们的新教室挺大的，窗户也挺多，所以白天很亮。老师说话挺清楚的，大家都听得懂。就是空调有点儿旧，夏天上课的时候挺热的。不过总的来说，我挺喜欢这个教室的。

Read and notice. How many times does the writer use 挺? Which sentence names the one problem, and which word introduces it?



2. 极其 vs 非常, 十分 and 特别 (extremely)

Form: 极其 + two-character adjective / verb

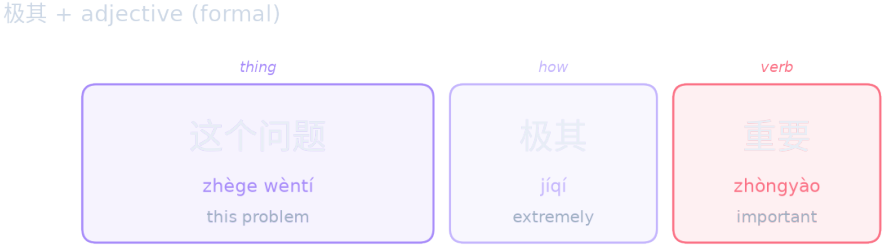
- **安全问题极其重要。** *Ānquán wèntí jíqí zhòngyào.* – Safety is extremely important.
- **他对工作极其认真。** – He is extremely serious about his work.
- **今天特别热！** – It's really hot today! (spoken)

How it works. 极其 is the strongest and most formal "very": notices, reports, essays. It goes before two-character words. In speech say 非常 / 特别; 十分 is a little formal and fine in both.

极其重要	十分紧张	特别热
extremely important (written)	very tight (a bit formal)	really hot (spoken)

Watch out

- *wrong:* 极其好 → 非常好: 极其 goes before two-character words.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 挺 + Adj + 的 (quite / rather)

1. Casually: "The food here is pretty good." 这儿的菜 …… 好吃的。

2. Which says "It isn't very expensive"?

- A. 不挺太贵。
- B. 不挺贵的。
- C. 不太贵。
- D. 挺不太贵。

3. Build: "I quite like this city."

Put in order: 我 / 挺喜欢 / 的。/ 这个城市

4. True or false? 挺 is more casual than 很. If false, correct it.

5. A friend asks about your new apartment. It is nice, though not amazing. Use 挺 + Adj + 的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 极其 vs 非常, 十分 and 特别 (extremely)

6. Complete (a school notice): "Safety is extremely important." 安全问题 …… 重要。

7. Chatting with a friend about the weather – which sounds natural?

- A. 今天特别热!
- B. 今天极其热。

8. Which is better?

- A. 这个办法极其好。
- B. 这个办法非常好。

9. Build: "He is extremely serious about his work."

Put in order: 对工作 / 极其 / 认真。/ 他

10. True or false? 特别 can also mean "especially". If false, correct it.

11. Write two sentences for a school notice about an exam, using 极其 once and 十分 once. Then say one of them to a friend in everyday words. Use 极其 or 非常, 十分 and 特别. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

12. Which sentence means "This place is not very convenient"?

- A. 这个地方不挺方便。
- B. 这个地方不太方便。

- C. 这个地方挺不方便的。

13. Find and fix the problem. A classmate wants to say "This place is not very convenient" and writes 这个地方不挺方便. Correct it.

14. Use it yourself. Say the room is pretty good, it is just a bit small.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 挺 + Adj + 的 (quite / rather)

1. 挺

挺 + Adj + 的.

2. C. 不太贵。

The negative of "quite" is 不太.

3. 我挺喜欢这个城市的。

挺 + feeling verb + object + 的.

4. True.

挺 belongs to friendly conversation.

5. Model answer: 挺好的，就是离公司有点儿远。

Check your answer:

- "Not very" is 不太 or 不怎么, not 不挺: 不太好, not 不挺好. (挺不错 / 挺不好 put 不 after 挺.)
- 挺 is spoken; in an essay prefer 比较 or 很.

■ 2. 极其 vs 非常, 十分 and 特别 (extremely)

6. 极其

Formal "extremely" – 极其.

7. A. 今天特别热!

In speech, 特别 or 非常; 极其 is written.

8. B. 这个办法非常好。

极其 sounds odd before a one-character adjective like 好.

9. 他对工作极其认真。

极其 + adjective.

10. True.

我特别喜欢秋天 – I especially like autumn.

11. Model answer: 本次考试极其重要，请大家认真准备。考试时间十分紧张，请不要迟到。(对朋友说：这次考试特别重要!)

Check your answer:

- 极其 and 十分 are before two-character words.
- My spoken version uses 特别 or 非常.
- I read them aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model.

■ Mixed practice

12. B. 不太 + adjective means "not very". C is also correct, but it means "quite inconvenient", which is stronger. 不挺 is not used.

13. 挺 is not negated with 不 in front. Say 这个地方不太方便 (not very convenient), or 这个地方挺不方便的 (quite inconvenient).

14. Model answer. 这个房间挺好的，就是有点儿小。

Review later. Tomorrow, describe your school with 挺 …… 的 and add one small problem with 就是.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Auxiliary words

HSK 4

Two ways to end a list without naming everything. 什么的 is spoken and relaxed: 苹果、香蕉什么的. 等 and 等等 are more formal and are used in writing and notices; 等 can also be followed by a word that names the whole group: 笔、本子等学习用品.

At a glance

- **1.** Noun, Noun + 什么的 – …and so on: 买点儿肉、蔬菜、饮料什么的。
- **2.** … 等 / 等等 – etc.: 北京、上海、西安等城市都很受欢迎。

1. Noun, Noun + 什么的 (...and so on)

Form: A、B (、C) + 什么的 (spoken)

- **买点儿肉、蔬菜、饮料什么的。** *Mǎi diǎnr ròu, shūcài, yǐnliào shénmede.* – Buy some meat, vegetables, drinks, that kind of thing.
- **我喜欢看书、听音乐什么的。** – I like reading, music and so on.
- **周末我常常打球、爬山什么的。** – At weekends I often play ball, go hiking, things like that.

How it works. 什么的 *shénmede* closes an open list in casual speech: "… and so on, … that kind of thing". The items are only examples. Here 什么 does not mean "what", so there is no question mark.

什么的	等
casual, at the end	formal, written
肉、蔬菜什么的	苹果、香蕉等水果

Watch out

- In a written report, use 等: 他去过北京、上海等城市.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. … 等 / 等等 (etc.)

Form: A、B + 等 (+ summary noun) · A、B + 等等 · A、B、C + 等 + number + noun

- **北京、上海、西安等城市都很受欢迎。** *Běijīng, Shànghǎi, Xī'ān děng chéngshì dōu hěn shòu huānyíng.* – Cities such as Beijing, Shanghai and Xi'an are very popular.
- **中国有很多传统节日，比如春节、中秋节等等。** – China has many traditional festivals, such as the Spring Festival, the Mid-Autumn Festival and so on.
- **北京、上海、广州等三个城市** – the three cities of Beijing, Shanghai and Guangzhou

How it works. 等 *děng* is the written "etc.". It follows the list and can be followed by a noun that sums it up (等水果, 等城市). 等等 is a stronger "and so on and so forth", at the very end.

等 + noun	等 + number + noun
an open list	a closed list: exactly these
苹果、香蕉等水果	北京、上海、广州等三个城市

After a list of nouns, 等 is "etc."; elsewhere it is the verb "wait": 等一下.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Noun, Noun + 什么的 (…and so on)

1. Complete casually: "I like reading, music and so on." 我喜欢看书、听音乐 ……。

2. Which suits a written report?

- A. 他去过什么的北京、上海。
- B. 他去过北京、上海什么的城市。
- C. 他去过北京、上海什么的。
- D. 他去过北京、上海等城市。

3. Build: "At weekends I often play ball, go hiking, things like that."

Put in order: 打球、 / 爬山 / 什么的。 / 周末我常常

4. True or false? A sentence ending in 什么的 needs a question mark. If false, correct

it.

5. Your roommate asks what to buy for the weekend barbecue. Use Noun, Noun + 什么的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. ... 等 / 等等 (etc.)

6. Complete (written): “apples, bananas and other fruit” 苹果、香蕉 …… 水果

7. What does 北京、上海、广州等三个城市 tell you?

- A. There are more than three cities.
- B. The list is incomplete.
- C. The speaker is waiting for three cities.
- D. There are exactly these three cities.

8. Build: “Cities such as Beijing and Shanghai are very popular.”

Put in order: 受欢迎。/ 北京、上海 / 等城市 / 都很

9. True or false? 等 is more formal than 什么的. If false, correct it.

10. You read about which Chinese cities have the most visitors. Use … 等 / 等等. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Choose 什么的 or 等: chatting with a friend / a shop notice. 我想买点儿水果、面包 ……。/ 本店出售笔、本子 …… 学习用品。

12. Find and fix the problem. A list says 我买了苹果、香蕉等水果. Does it tell you exactly what else was bought?

13. Use it yourself. Tell a friend you want to buy pens, notebooks and so on; then write it as a shop notice.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Noun, Noun + 什么的 (...and so on)

1. 什么的

什么的 ends an open list.

2. D. 他去过北京、上海等城市。

Writing uses 等 + summary noun.

3. 周末我常常打球、爬山什么的。

List + 什么的.

4. False.

Here 什么的 means "and so on"; it is a statement.

5. Model answer: 买点儿肉、蔬菜、饮料什么的。

Check your answer:

- 什么的 here is not "what"; it ends a list, so no question mark.
- In writing use 等 instead: 北京、上海等城市 – "Cities such as Beijing and Shanghai."

■ 2. ... 等 / 等等 (etc.)

6. 等

List + 等 + summary noun.

7. D. There are exactly these three cities.

A number after 等 closes the list.

8. 北京、上海等城市都很受欢迎。

List + 等 + noun + comment.

9. True.

等 suits writing; 什么的 suits chat.

10. Model answer: 北京、上海、西安等城市都很受欢迎。

Check your answer:

- 等 is formal; in chat, 什么的 sounds more natural.
- With a number after 等, the number gives the total: 北京、上海、广州等三个城市 = these three cities.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

11. 我想买点儿水果、面包什么的。本店出售笔、本子等学习用品。什么的 is spoken; 等 is written and can be followed by the group name.

12. No. 等 says the list goes on with similar things (more fruit), but it does not name them.

13. Model answer. 我想买点儿笔、本子什么的。本店出售笔、本子等学习用品。什么的 for speech; 等 for writing.

Review later. Tomorrow, make one spoken list with 什么的 and one written list with 等.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Conjunctions

HSK 4

HSK 4 conjunctions link whole sentences. Three of them contrast (但是/可是, 不过, 而), four add more information (还有, 另外, 并且, 再说), one shows what happened next (于是), and 用/通过 …… 来 …… says how something is done. Choose by the job: contrast, adding, or result.

At a glance

But

- **1.** 可是 / 但是 – two words for "but": 这家咖啡馆很贵，可是咖啡真的很好喝。
- **2.** 不过 – a softer "but": 房间很干净，不过晚上有点儿吵。
- **3.** 而 – whereas / and yet: 北方的冬天很冷，而南方很暖和。

Adding more

- **4.** 还有 – also / and / what's more: 带护照、钱包，还有手机充电器。
- **5.** 另外 – besides / in addition: 另外，下周五公司放假。
- **6.** 并且 – moreover / and also: 这家酒店很干净，并且价格也不贵。
- **7.** 再说 – besides / what's more: 我太累了，再说也没钱了。
- **8.** 首先 … 其次 … 最后 – first, second, finally: 首先要多听，其次要多说，最后要坚持。
- **9.** 例如 vs 比如 – for example: 我喜欢运动，例如游泳和跑步。

And so, and by means of

- **10.** 于是 – thereupon / and so: 雨停了，于是孩子们跑出去玩了。
- **11.** 用 / 通过 … 来 … – by means of …: 我用手机软件来记生词。

1. 可是 / 但是 (two words for "but")

Form: (虽然) A，可是 / 但是 + B

- **这家咖啡馆很贵，可是咖啡真的很好喝。** *Zhè jiā kāfēiguǎn hěn guì, kěshì kāfēi zhēn de hěn hǎohē.* – This café is expensive, but the coffee is really good.
- **我想去，可是妈妈不让。** *Wǒ xiǎng qù, kěshì māma bú ràng.* – I want to go, but Mum won't let me.
- **虽然下雨，但是比赛照常进行。** – Although it was raining, the match went ahead.

How it works. Both start the second clause, before the subject, and both pair with 虽然. 却 after the subject can strengthen the contrast: 他很聪明，但是却不努力.

不过	可是	但是
a small reservation	clear contrast, spoken, often with feeling	clear contrast, neutral, fits writing

Watch out

- One “but” per contrast: *wrong:* 虽然 …… 可是但是 …….
- *wrong:* 我但是没去 → 但是我没去.



2. 不过 (a softer “but”)

Form: A，不过 B (but, though) · 不过 + amount / noun (only)

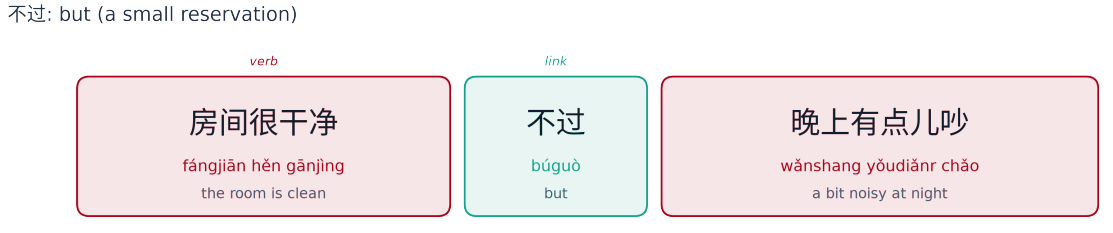
- **房间很干净，不过晚上有点儿吵。** *Fángjiān hěn gānjìng, búguò wǎnshang yǒudiǎnr chǎo.* – The room was clean, though it was a bit noisy at night.
- **你可以用我的电脑，不过别下载游戏。** – You can use my computer, but don’t download games.
- **他不过是个孩子。** – He’s only a child.

How it works. 不过 *búguò* adds a contrast or a small reservation, more gently than 但是. The first clause is usually positive; 不过 adds the limit. It starts its clause, before the subject. Before a noun or amount, 不过 means “only, merely”: 这不过是个小问题.

不过	但是 / 可是
a small reservation	a clear contrast

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我不过今天没时间 → 不过我今天没时间.



3. 而 (whereas / and yet)

Form: A，而 B (whereas) · adjective + 而 + adjective (written "and")

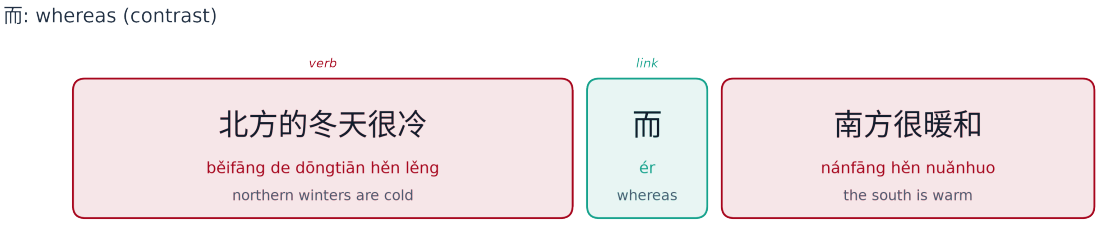
- **北方的冬天很冷，而南方很暖和。** *Běifāng de dōngtiān hěn lěng, ér nánfāng hěn nuǎnhuo.* – Winters in the north are cold, whereas the south is warm.
- **他学法律，而我学医。** – He studies law, while I study medicine.
- **他很有钱，而生活却很简单。** – He's very rich, yet he lives very simply.
- **这个方法简单而有效。** – This method is simple and effective.

How it works. 而 *ér* sets two comparable facts side by side (two places, two people, two qualities). It is written and formal; it suits a newspaper article comparing two cities. With 却 it contrasts a fact with an expectation. Between two adjectives, it means "and".

但是	而
the second part goes against the first	often just sets two facts side by side
spoken and written	written, formal

Watch out

- In chat, say 但是, 可是 or 却 instead.



4. 还有 (also / and / what's more)

Form: A、B，还有 C · 还有，+ new point

- **带护照、钱包，还有手机充电器。** *Dài hùzhào, qiánbāo, hái yǒu shǒujī chōngdiànqì.* – Bring your passport and wallet, and also your phone charger.
- **我买了面包、牛奶，还有鸡蛋。** – I bought bread and milk, and eggs too.
- **还有，你别忘了给妈妈打电话。** – Also, don't forget to call Mum.

How it works. 还有 *hái yǒu* adds one more item to a list, or one more point after a pause, often after a comma. 和 joins two nouns inside one phrase (面包和牛奶); 还有 adds an afterthought.

Followed by an amount, 还 + 有 means "still have": 我还有两个苹果. Check what follows: an amount (still have), or a new item or point (and also).

还有: and also (one more item)



5. 另外 (besides / in addition)

Form: 另外， + new point · subject + 另外 + verb · 另外 (的) + number + noun

- **另外，下周五公司放假。** *Lìngwài, xià zhōuwǔ gōngsī fàngjià.* – Also, the company is closed next Friday.
- **另外，请带身份证。** – In addition, please bring your ID.
- **我另外给你准备了一份。** – I've prepared an extra one for you.
- **另外一个人 / 另外两个问题** – the other person / the other two questions

How it works. 另外 *lìngwài* has three uses.

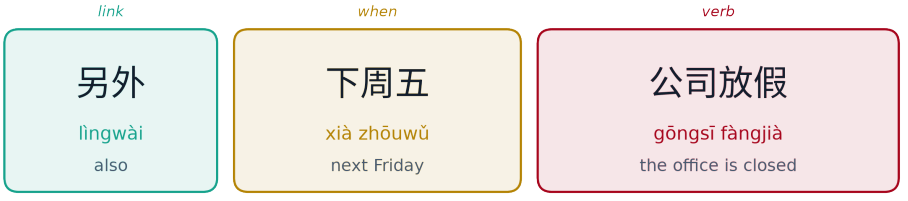
Position	Meaning	Example
start of the sentence, with a comma	in addition (a separate point)	另外，……
after the subject, before a verb	separately, on the side	他另外还学日语
before a number or 的 + noun	the other, another	另外一个人

It is common in emails, meetings and instructions.

Watch out

- 另外 adds something *different*. To add more of the same, use 还 or 也.

另外: in addition, separately



6. 并且 (moreover / and also)

Form: clause, 并且 (+ 也 / 还) + clause

- **这家酒店很干净，并且价格也不贵。** *Zhè jiā jiǔdiàn hěn gānjìng, bìngqiě jiàgé yě bú guì.* – This hotel is clean, and moreover the price isn't high.
- **他按时完成了任务，并且做得很好。** – He finished the task on time, and did it very well too.
- **房间很大，并且很亮。** – The room is big, and bright as well.

How it works. 并且 *bìngqiě* adds a further point in the same direction, "and moreover". It starts the second clause; 也 or 还 often follow. It is close to 而且 but more written, and suits lists of actions or facts.

而且	并且
very common in speech	written
pairs with 不但: 不但便宜，而且好吃	lists of actions or facts

Watch out

- Both points go the same way. For a contrast, use 但是.
- 并且 does not join nouns: *wrong:* 苹果并且香蕉 → 苹果和香蕉.



7. 再说 (besides / what's more)

Form: reason 1, 再说 + reason 2 · … 以后再说 (deal with it later)

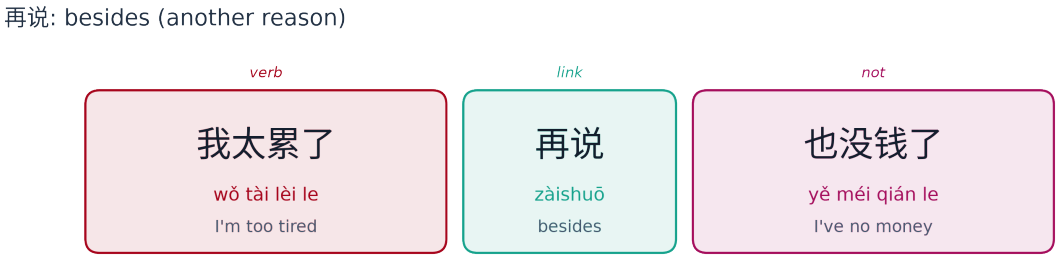
- **我太累了，再说也没钱了。** *Wǒ tài lèi le, zàishuō yě méi qián le.* – I'm too tired, and besides, I'm out of money.
- **太晚了，再说商店也关门了。** – It's too late, and besides, the shop is closed.
- **别买了，太贵了，再说你已经有一个了。** – Don't buy it; it's too expensive, and besides, you already have one.
- **这件事以后再说吧。** – Let's talk about it later.

How it works. 再说 *zàishuō* starts a second clause to add a further reason, in conversation: "besides, what's more". The added reason often has 也 or 还. It is spoken; in writing use 而且 or 此外.

At the end of a sentence, 再说 means “we’ll deal with it later”: 这个问题明天再说.

Watch out

- 再说 adds reasons, not steps. “Then” in a sequence is 然后.



8. 首先 … 其次 … 最后 (first, second, finally)

Form: 首先 …，其次 …，最后 …

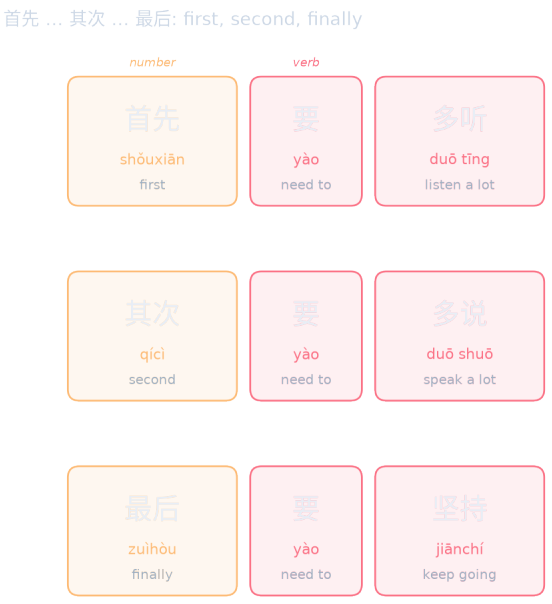
- **首先要多听，其次要多说，最后要坚持。** *Shǒuxiān yào duō tīng, qícì yào duō shuō, zuìhòu yào jiānchí.* – First, listen a lot; second, speak a lot; finally, keep going.
- **首先洗手，然后切菜，接着炒菜，最后放调料。** – First wash your hands, then cut the vegetables, next fry them, and finally add the seasoning.
- **首先，我要感谢大家。** – First of all, I’d like to thank everyone.

How it works. 首先, 其次 and 最后 put points or steps in order. Each starts its own point. Add 然后 or 接着 for more steps.

首先 … 其次 … 最后	然后	开始 … 后来
first, second, finally (a list)	then (in a story)	at first … later

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我吃了早饭，其次去上学 → 我吃了早饭，然后去上学.
- *wrong:* 我首先不习惯，后来 … → 我开始不习惯，后来 ….



9. 例如 vs 比如 (for example)

Form: general word，例如 / 比如 + A、B (等)

- **我喜欢运动，例如游泳和跑步。** *Wǒ xǐhuan yùndòng, lìrú yóuyǒng hé pǎobù.* – I like sport, for example swimming and running.
- **很多水果对身体好，例如苹果、香蕉。** – Lots of fruit is good for you, for example apples and bananas.
- **你可以做点儿运动，比如打打球。** – You could do some exercise, like playing a bit of ball.

How it works. Say the general group first, then 例如 (a little formal) or 比如 / 比如说 (spoken) and the examples, separated by 、. End an incomplete list with 等. 像 + noun + 这样的 = like ….

例如苹果、香蕉等	比如说	像北京这样的城市
for example apples, bananas …	for example (speech)	cities like Beijing

Watch out

- *wrong:* 例如苹果，我喜欢水果 → 我喜欢水果，例如苹果.



10. 于是 (thereupon / and so)

Form: past event，于是 + what someone did next

- **雨停了，于是孩子们跑出去玩了。** *Yǔ tíng le, yúshì háizimen pǎo chūqu wán le.* – The rain stopped, so the children ran out to play.
- **他饿了，于是去买了面包。** – He was hungry, so he went to buy some bread.
- **他听说那家店很有名，于是决定去试试。** – He heard the shop was famous, so he decided to try it.

How it works. 于是 *yúshì* moves a story forward: the second event happens because of, and straight after, the first. It starts the second clause, before any new subject. It is for past narration: event, then reaction.

所以	于是
a logical result, any time	the next action in a past story
因为下雨，所以比赛取消了	下雨了，于是我们回家了

Watch out

- Not for plans, rules or advice: *wrong:* 如果下雨，于是我们不去 → 如果下雨，我们就不去.



11. 用 / 通过 ... 来 ... (by means of ...)

Form: 用 + tool + (来) + verb · 通过 + method + (来) + verb

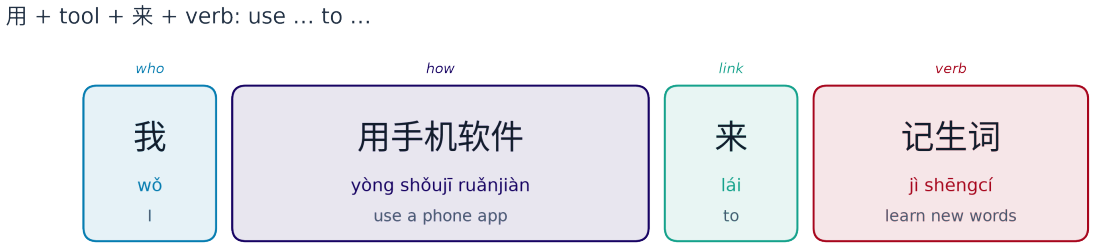
- **我用手机软件来记生词。** *Wǒ yòng shǒujī ruǎnjiàn lái jì shēngcí.* – I use a phone app to memorise new words.
- **我用词典来查生词。** – I use a dictionary to look up new words.
- **他通过运动来减肥。** *Tā tōngguò yùndòng lái jiǎnféi.* – He loses weight through exercise.
- **他通过朋友介绍找到了工作。** – He found the job through a friend's introduction.

How it works. The means comes first, then the action. 来 here does not mean "come": it links the means to the purpose, and can be left out (我用手机记生词).

用	通过
a concrete tool or language	a method, process or channel
用筷子吃饭, 用中文写	通过网络学习, 通过朋友介绍

Watch out

- In this pattern the tool goes first: *wrong:* 吃饭用筷子 → 用筷子吃饭.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 可是 / 但是 (two words for "but")

1. Complete (written): "Although it was raining, the match went ahead." 虽然下雨，…… 比赛照常进行。

2. Which sentence has correct word order?

- A. 我想去，没时间但是。
- B. 我但是没去。
- C. 我想去，但是没时间。
- D. 但是我想去，没时间。

3. Build: “I want to go, but Mum won’t let me.”

Put in order: ， / 妈妈不让。/ 可是 / 我想去

4. True or false? 却 can follow the subject to strengthen a contrast. If false, correct it.

5. You tell a friend the new café is expensive, but the coffee really is excellent. Use 可是 / 但是. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 不过 (a softer “but”)

6. Complete: “The film was good, though a bit long.” 电影不错，…… 有点儿长。

7. In 这不过是个小问题, what does 不过 mean?

- A. but
- B. however much
- C. not even
- D. only, merely

8. Build: “You can use my computer, but don’t download games.”

Put in order: 你可以用我的电脑 / 别下载游戏。/ 不过 / ，

9. True or false? 不过 sounds softer than 但是. If false, correct it.

10. A friend asks about the hotel you stayed in. It was clean and friendly, but noisy at night. Use 不过. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 而 (whereas / and yet)

11. Complete (written): “He likes coffee, whereas she likes tea.” 他喜欢咖啡，…… 她喜欢茶。

12. Which context suits 而 best?

- A. Ordering food in a restaurant
- B. Greeting a neighbour
- C. A newspaper article comparing two cities
- D. A text message to a friend

13. Build: “This method is simple and effective.”

Put in order: 而 / 简单 / 有效。/ 这个方法

14. True or false? 而 can simply set two facts side by side without a strong “but”. If false, correct it.

15. You are comparing the weather in two parts of China for a school project. Use 而. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 还有 (also / and / what's more)

16. Add a point: "Also, tomorrow's meeting is at nine." ……, 明天的会九点开始。

17. In 我还有两个苹果, what does 还有 mean?

- A. and also
- B. however
- C. still have
- D. besides

18. Build: "I bought bread and milk, and also eggs."

Put in order: 还有 / 我买了面包、牛奶 / 鸡蛋。/ ,

19. True or false? 还有 often adds an afterthought after a comma. If false, correct it.

20. You are listing what to pack for a trip and suddenly remember an item. Use 还有. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 另外 (besides / in addition)

21. Add a separate point: "In addition, please bring your ID." ……, 请带身份证。

22. What does 另外一个人 mean?

- A. besides a person
- B. the other person
- C. every person
- D. one more time

23. Build: "He's also studying Japanese on the side."

Put in order: 另外 / 他 / 日语。/ 还学

24. True or false? 另外 is used to add a different, separate point. If false, correct it.

25. Your manager finishes the main point of a meeting and then adds a separate item. Use 另外. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 并且 (moreover / and also)

26. Complete (written): "The room is big, and moreover it is bright." 房间很大, …… 很亮。

27. Which sentence is natural?

- A. 他很聪明，并且很努力。
- B. 他并且聪明很努力。
- C. 他很聪明，并且不聪明。
- D. 他很聪明，并且很懒。

28. Build: "He finished on time, and did it very well too."

Put in order: ， / 并且 / 他按时完成了任务 / 做得很好。

29. True or false? 不但 pairs naturally with 而且. If false, correct it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

30. In your review of a hotel, you want to add a second, separate strength. Use 并且. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 再说 (besides / what's more)

31. Complete: "It's too late, and besides, the shop is closed." 太晚了，…… 商店也关门了。

32. What does 这个问题明天再说 mean?

- A. Say this question again tomorrow.
- B. Besides this question, tomorrow…
- C. This question was said yesterday.
- D. Let's deal with this question tomorrow.

33. Build: "Don't buy it – it's too expensive, and besides you already have one."

Put in order: 别买了 / ， 再说 / ， 太贵了 / 你已经有一个了。

34. True or false? 再说 is the usual linker for "then" in a sequence of steps. If false, correct it.

35. A friend wants to go out tonight, but you are tired and have no money left. Use 再说. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 首先 ... 其次 ... 最后 (first, second, finally)

36. Put the words in the order they are used in a list.

Put in order: 最后 / 其次 / 首先

37. Complete: "First, listen a lot; second, speak a lot." 首先要多听，…… 要多说。

38. "I ate breakfast, then went to school." (a story) Which word fits? 我吃了早饭，_____ 去上学。

- A. 其次
- B. 然后

39. "At first I wasn't used to it; later I got used to it." Which is right?

- A. 我首先不习惯，后来习惯了。
- B. 我开始不习惯，后来习惯了。

40. True or false? 首先，我要感谢大家 means "First of all, I'd like to thank everyone." If false, correct it.

41. A friend asks how to make a good first impression at a job interview. Give three tips with 首先, 其次 and 最后. Use 首先 … 其次 … 最后. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 9. 例如 vs 比如 (for example)

42. Complete: “I like sport, for example swimming and running.” 我喜欢运动，…… 游泳和跑步。

43. The group hasn’t been named yet. Which order is right?

- A. 例如苹果，我喜欢水果。
- B. 我喜欢水果，例如苹果。

44. Chatting with a friend – which sounds most natural?

- A. 你可以做点儿运动，例如打打球等。
- B. 你可以做点儿运动，比如打打球。

45. Build: “Lots of fruit is good for you, for example apples and bananas.”

Put in order: 很多水果对身体好， / 苹果、 / 香蕉。 / 例如

46. True or false? 像 + noun + 这样的 can mean “like …”, as in 像北京这样的大城市. If false, correct it.

47. Answer in two sentences: What do you do to relax? Give examples with 比如 (speech) and then write the same idea with 例如 … 等. Use 例如 or 比如. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 10. 于是 (thereupon / and so)

48. Complete: “He was hungry, so he went to buy some bread.” 他饿了，…… 去买了面包。

49. Which sentence uses 于是 correctly?

- A. 天黑了，于是我们回家了。
- B. 你应该休息，于是你会好。
- C. 如果明天下雨，于是我们不去。
- D. 于是因为下雨，比赛取消了。

50. Build: “He heard the shop was famous, so he decided to try it.”

Put in order: 他听说那家店很有名 / ， / 决定去试试。 / 于是

51. True or false? 于是 is suitable for general rules about the future. If false, correct it.

52. You are reading a short story aloud: the rain stopped, and the children rushed outside. Use 于是. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 11. 用 / 通过 ... 来 ... (by means of ...)

53. Complete: “I use a dictionary to look up new words.” 我 …… 词典来查生词。

54. Which fits a method? “He found the job through a friend’s introduction.” 他 _____ 朋友介绍找到了工作。

- A. 跟
- B. 通过

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- C. 用
- D. 对

55. Build: “He loses weight through exercise.”

Put in order: 减肥。 / 通过运动 / 他 / 来

56. True or false? In 用手机来记生词, 来 means “come”. If false, correct it.

57. A classmate asks how you remember so many characters. Use 用 / 通过 … 来 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

58. Choose 于是 or 不过: 我没赶上公共汽车，…… 决定走路去。 / 这个房间很大，…… 有点儿贵。

59. Choose 再说 or 而: 今天太晚了，…… 外面在下雨，明天再去吧。 / 哥哥喜欢运动，…… 弟弟喜欢看书。

60. Say “He learns words by watching films.”

61. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 房间很小，于是很安静 for “The room is small but quiet.” Which word is wrong, and why?

62. Use it yourself. Say you missed the bus, so you decided to walk; add that the road was a bit far.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 可是 / 但是 (two words for "but")

1. 但是

虽然 pairs with 但是 / 可是.

2. C. 我想去，但是没时间。

但是 starts the contrasting clause.

3. 我想去，可是妈妈不让。

Clause 1, 可是 + clause 2.

4. True.

True. 却 is an adverb after the subject that sharpens a contrast, often with 但是 or 可是: 我很累，但是他却很精神.

5. Model answer: 这家咖啡馆很贵，可是咖啡真的很好喝。

Check your answer:

- Do not double them: 虽然 … 但是 …, not 虽然 … 可是但是 ….
- Put 但是 / 可是 at the start of the clause, before the subject: 但是我没去, not 我但是没去.

■ 2. 不过 (a softer "but")

6. 不过

不过 adds a soft reservation.

7. D. only, merely

Before a noun phrase, 不过 = only.

8. 你可以用我的电脑，不过别下载游戏。

Permission, then 不过 + limit.

9. True.

不过 often adds a minor reservation.

10. Model answer: 房间很干净，不过晚上有点儿吵。

Check your answer:

- 不过 starts its clause, before the subject: 不过我今天没时间, not 我不过今天没时间.
- Keep the reservation small: for a strong contrast, 但是 sounds more natural.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 而 (whereas / and yet)

11. 而

而 contrasts two comparable facts.

12. C. A newspaper article comparing two cities

而 is written, formal style.

13. 这个方法简单而有效。

Adj + 而 + Adj.

14. True.

True. 而 can simply set two facts side by side ("while, whereas"): 他学法律，而我学医 "He studies law, while I study medicine."

15. Model answer: 北方的冬天很冷，而南方很暖和。

Check your answer:

- 而 is written style; in chat say 但是, 可是 or just 却.
- Both clauses should be comparable (two places, two people, two qualities) for the "whereas" meaning.

■ 4. 还有 (also / and / what's more)

16. 还有

还有 at the start adds a new point.

17. C. still have

还 + 有 + amount = still have.

18. 我买了面包、牛奶，还有鸡蛋。

List, then 还有 + one more item.

19. True.

It adds one more item or point.

20. Model answer: 带护照、钱包，还有手机充电器。

Check your answer:

- As a linker, 还有 = "and also": 还有一件事 ("There is one more thing"). As a verb phrase, 还 + 有 = "still have": 我还有十块钱 – "I still have ten yuan."
- Ask: is it about what is left (still have) or about adding one more thing (and also: 还有一件事)?

■ 5. 另外 (besides / in addition)

21. 另外

另外 introduces a new, separate point.

22. B. the other person

另外 + number + MW + noun = the other / another.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

23. 他另外还学日语。

Subject + 另外 + verb phrase.

24. True.

For more of the same, use 还 or 也.

25. Model answer: 另外，下周五公司放假。

Check your answer:

- 另外 adds a separate point or item (另外两个问题 = two other questions); inside one clause, 还 / 也 add more of the same.
- At the start of a sentence, put a comma after 另外.

■ 6. 并且 (moreover / and also)

26. 并且

并且 adds a point in the same direction.

27. A. 他很聪明，并且很努力。

并且 adds a point in the same direction; a contrast takes 但是.

28. 他按时完成了任务，并且做得很好。

Clause, 并且 + further point.

29. True.

不但 … 而且 … is the standard pair.

30. Model answer: 这家酒店很干净，并且价格也不贵。

Check your answer:

- 并且 adds a point in the same direction; for a contrast use 但是.
- 并且 does not join two nouns: 苹果和香蕉, not 苹果并且香蕉.

■ 7. 再说 (besides / what's more)

31. 再说

再说 adds a further reason.

32. D. Let's deal with this question tomorrow.

再说 at the end postpones a matter.

33. 别买了，太贵了，再说你已经有一个了。

Reason 1, 再说 + reason 2.

34. False.

Sequences use 然后; 再说 adds reasons.

35. Model answer: 我太累了，再说也没钱了。

Check your answer:

- 再说 adds a reason or argument; for "then" in a sequence, use 然后.
- It is spoken; in writing use 而且 or 此外.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 8. 首先 ... 其次 ... 最后 (first, second, finally)

36. 首先其次最后

首先 (first), 其次 (second), 最后 (finally).

37. 其次

其次 = second, the next point.

38. B. 然后

For "then" in a story, use 然后. 其次 ranks points.

39. B. 我开始不习惯，后来习惯了。

"At first … later" is 开始 … 后来. 首先 starts a list.

40. True.

首先 can introduce the first and most important point.

41. Model answer: 首先要准时到，其次要穿得正式一点儿，最后回答问题的时候要有自信。

Check your answer:

- The three points start with 首先, 其次 and 最后.
- Each point is a short, clear piece of advice.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 9. 例如 vs 比如 (for example)

42. 例如

For example – 例如 (or 比如 in speech).

43. B. 我喜欢水果，例如苹果。

The general word comes first, then 例如 + the example.

44. B. 你可以做点儿运动，比如打打球。

In speech, 比如; 例如 … 等 sounds written.

45. 很多水果对身体好，例如苹果、香蕉。

General word, then 例如 + examples joined with 、.

46. True.

像 is used before a noun.

47. Model answer: 我喜欢做一些轻松的事，比如听音乐、看电影。(写：我放松的方法很多，例如听音乐、看电影、散步等。)

Check your answer:

- The general idea comes before 比如 / 例如.
- Examples are separated with 、and the written list ends with 等.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 10. 于是 (thereupon / and so)

48. 于是

于是 tells what he did next.

49. A. 天黑了，于是我们回家了。

于是 narrates the next past action.

50. 他听说那家店很有名，于是决定去试试。

Event, then 于是 + decision.

51. False.

It narrates what happened next in the past.

52. Model answer: 雨停了，于是孩子们跑出去玩了。

Check your answer:

- 于是 tells what someone did next; it is not for plans, rules or advice: 如果下雨，我们就不去, not 于是我们不去.
- It starts the second clause, usually before the subject if there is a new one: 于是我们回家了 – "So we went home."

■ 11. 用 / 通过 ... 来 ... (by means of ...)

53. 用

用 + tool + 来 + action.

54. B. 通过

A method or channel takes 通过.

55. 他通过运动来减肥。

通过 + method + 来 + purpose.

56. False.

来 links the means to the purpose here.

57. Model answer: 我用手机软件来记生词。

Check your answer:

- Order: 用 + tool + (来) + action: 用筷子吃饭, not 吃饭用筷子 in this pattern.
- 来 here is not "come"; it links the means to the purpose.

■ Mixed practice

58. 我没赶上公共汽车，于是决定走路去 (what happened next)。这个房间很大，不过有点儿贵 (a soft contrast).

59. 今天太晚了，再说外面在下雨，明天再去吧。哥哥喜欢运动，而弟弟喜欢看书。再说 adds another reason; 而 contrasts two people or things.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

60. 他通过看电影来学习生词。通过 + method + 来 + action says how something is done.

61. 于是 means "and so" (what happened next). A contrast needs 不过 or 但是: 房间很小，不过很安静.

62. Model answer. 我没赶上公共汽车，于是决定走路去。不过，路有点儿远。

Review later. Tomorrow, write three sentences: one with 于是, one with 不过, one with 再说.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Nouns

HSK 4

其中 means “among them” or “of which”. It points back to a group already named or clear from context and picks out part of it: 我们班有三十个学生，其中五个是留学生. Name the group first, then use 其中 at the start of the next clause.

其中 (among them / of which)

Form: group，其中 + part (number + measure word / 最 …)

- **我们班有三十个学生，其中五个是留学生。** *Wǒmen bān yǒu sānshí ge xuésheng, qízhōng wǔ ge shì liúxuéshēng.* – There are thirty students in our class, five of whom are international students.
- **我在这儿有三个朋友，其中一个是医生。** *Wǒ zài zhèr yǒu sān ge péngyou, qízhōng yí ge shì yīshēng.* – I have three friends here; one of them is a doctor.
- **这些菜我都喜欢，其中我最喜欢饺子。** *Zhèxiē cài wǒ dōu xǐhuan, qízhōng wǒ zuì xǐhuan jiǎozi.* – I like all these dishes; of them, I like dumplings best.
- **他去过很多国家，其中印象最深的是日本。** *Tā qùguo hěn duō guójiā, qízhōng yìnxiàng zuì shēn de shì Rìběn.* – He has been to many countries; the one that impressed him most was Japan.
- **这次比赛有八个队参加，其中两个来自上海。** *Zhè cì bǐsài yǒu bā ge duì cānjiā, qízhōng liǎng ge láizì Shànghǎi.* – Eight teams took part in this competition, two of them from Shanghai.
- **我喜欢的水果有很多，苹果是其中之一。** *Wǒ xǐhuan de shuǐguǒ yǒu hěn duō, píngguǒ shì qízhōng zhī yī.* – There are lots of fruits I like; apples are one of them.

How it works. 其中 *qízhōng* means “among them, of which”. It points back to a group you have just named and picks out part of it, so it starts the *second* clause. After 其中 comes the part: a number + measure word (其中两个, 其中一本), a 最 phrase (其中最便宜的), or a whole clause about one member (其中一个人是我哥哥).

Think of it as a pointer: the first clause draws a circle around a group, and 其中 says “inside that circle”. This is why it is so common when reporting numbers: total first, then 其中 + the part.

其中	在 …… 中 / …… 里
refers back to a group already named	names the group inside the same phrase
我有三个朋友，其中两个是老师。	在这些学生中，他最高。

Watch out

- 其中 needs a group in the clause before it; it cannot open a conversation: *wrong:* 其中一个是医生。(said first) → 我有三个朋友，其中一个是医生。
- Do not use 中间 for this meaning: *wrong:* 我有三个朋友，中间一个是医生 → 其中一个是医生. (中间 means “in the middle” of a place or row.)

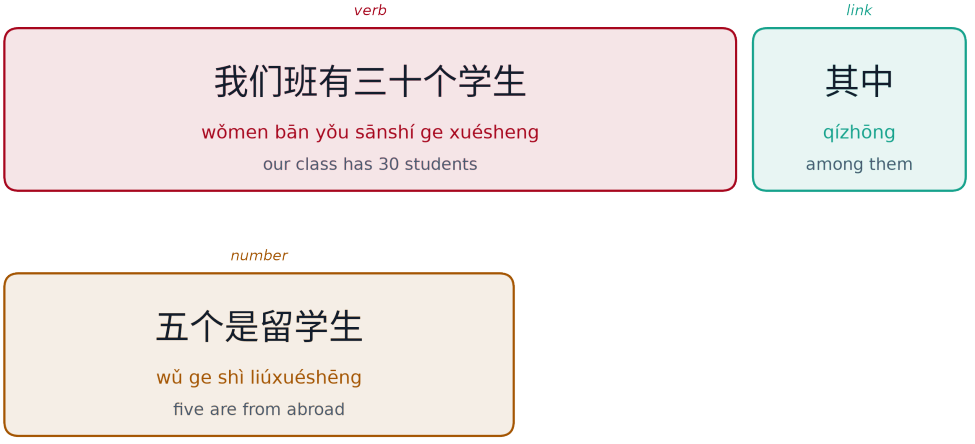
- 其中之一 means “one of them”: 苹果是其中之一. The group before it must have several members; 其中 cannot point back to one single thing.

In a passage

> 我们学校今年组织了五个兴趣小组，其中最受欢迎的是摄影小组，一共有四十多个学生报名。另外四个小组人比较少，其中书法小组只有八个人。老师说明年会再增加两个小组。

Read and notice. Find the two groups that 其中 points back to. Which number tells you the size of each part?

其中: among them



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “I have three friends here; one of them is a doctor.” 我在这儿有三个朋友，…… 一个是医生。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我最喜欢其中。
- B. 其中我最喜欢这个。
- C. 其中的这些颜色很好看。
- D. 这些颜色都很好看，其中我最喜欢蓝色。

3. Build: “I like all these dishes; of them, I like dumplings best.”

Put in order: 其中我 / ， / 这些菜我都喜欢 / 最喜欢饺子。

4. True or false? 在这些学生中 names the group within the same phrase. If false, correct it.

5. Your teacher describes your new class to a visitor. Use 其中. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我们班有三十个学生，其中五个是留学生。
- B. 其中五个是留学生，我们班有三十个学生。

7. Join with 其中: I bought three books / one is a dictionary.

8. Find and fix the problem. A group has twelve pupils, 其中四人会游泳. A classmate says the group has four pupils. Correct the reading.

9. Use it yourself. Say there are ten books here, three of which are in English.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 其中

其中 picks out part of the group just mentioned.

2. D. 这些颜色都很好看，其中我最喜欢蓝色。

The group must be named first; then 其中 picks one.

3. 这些菜我都喜欢，其中我最喜欢饺子。

Group, then 其中 + choice.

4. True.

其中 points back; 在 … 中 names the group directly.

5. Model answer: 我们班有三十个学生，其中五个是留学生。

Check your answer:

- 其中 points back to a group already mentioned; it can't start a conversation out of nowhere.
- The common form is 其中 + number + measure word: 其中两个, 其中一本.

■ Mixed practice

6. A. 其中 points back to a group you have already named, so the group comes first.

7. 我买了三本书，其中一本是词典。

8. The group has twelve pupils; four of them can swim. 其中 picks out part of the group, not the whole group.

9. Model answer. 这里有十本书，其中三本是英文的。

Review later. Tomorrow, describe your class with 其中 and a number.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Numbers

HSK 4

Two number patterns. Fractions in Chinese name the whole first and the part second: 三分之一 is “one third” (literally “of three parts, one”). 一 + measure word + 一 + measure word means “one by one”: 一个一个地进来.

At a glance

- **1.** 一 + MW + 一 + MW – one by one: 别着急，一步一步地学。
- **2.** Fractions with 分之: 五分之一的学生走路上学。

1. 一 + MW + 一 + MW (one by one)

Form: 一 + measure word + 一 + measure word + 地 + verb · … + 的 + noun

- **别着急，一步一步地学。** *Bié zháojí, yí bù yí bù de xué.* – Don’t rush; learn it step by step.
- **请一个一个地进来。** – Please come in one by one.
- **孩子一天一天地长大了。** – The child grew up day by day.
- **一座一座的高楼** – tall building after tall building

How it works. Repeating 一 + measure word shows things happening one at a time, or change bit by bit: 一个一个, 一天一天, 一步一步, 一本一本. Before a verb it takes 地 and comes before the verb. Before a noun it takes 的 and describes many in a row.

Watch out

- Use the same measure word twice: *wrong:* 一本一个 → 一本一本.
- *wrong:* 问一个一个 → 一个一个地问.

一 + measure + 一 + measure: one by one



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. Fractions with 分之

Form: bottom number + 分之 + top number · 百分之 + number

- **五分之一的学生走路上学。** *Wǔ fēn zhī yī de xuésheng zǒulù shàngxué.* – One fifth of the students walk to school.
- **三分之二的人** – two thirds of the people
- **我们的成绩提高了百分之二十。** *Wǒmen de chéngjì tígāole bǎi fēn zhī èrshí.* – Our scores rose by 20%.

How it works. Chinese says the **bottom** number first: "of five parts, one" = 五分之一. Per cent works the same way, with 百 (a hundred) at the bottom. Before a noun, add 的.

Value	Chinese
1/3	三分之一
3/4	四分之三
2/5	五分之二
4/3	三分之四
50%	百分之五十
100%	百分之百

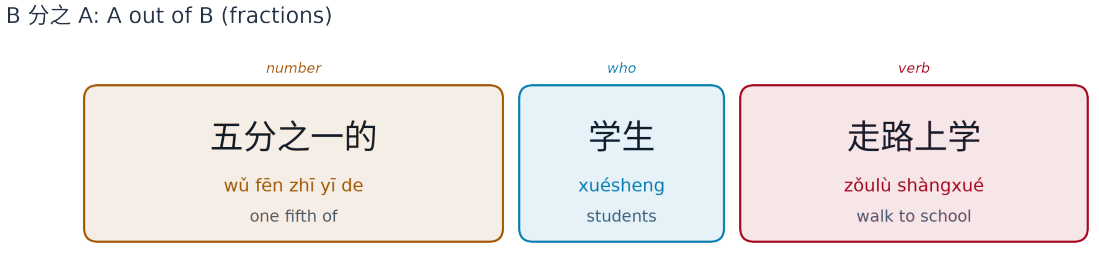
In speech, a half is usually 一半: 一半的学生. To ask "what fraction?", say 几分之几.

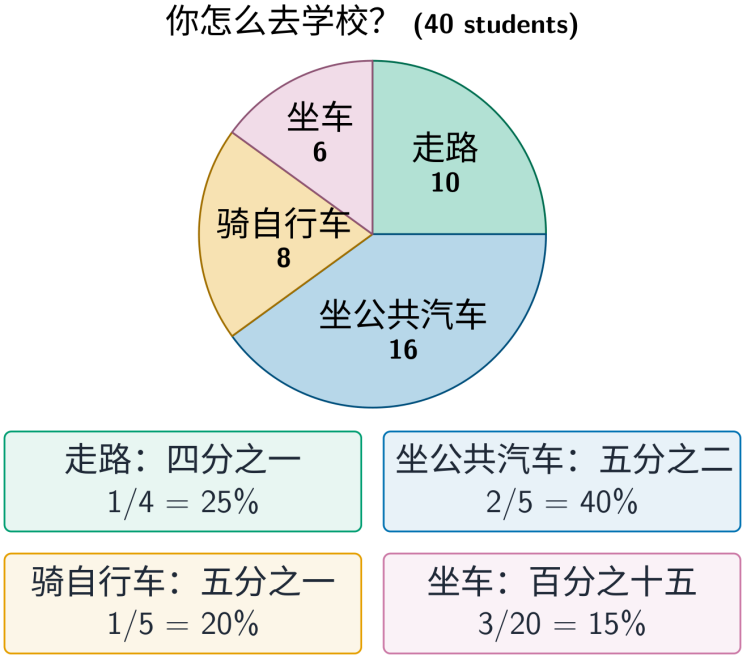
Reading data with 占. A 占 + fraction / % = "A makes up …". Divide the part by the total, then say the bottom number first: 16 of 40 students → 16 ÷ 40 = 2/5 → **坐公共汽车的学生占五分之二，也就是百分之四十。**

Discounts with 打折. 打 N 折 means you pay N tenths of the price: **打八折** = pay 80% (20% off), **打五折** = half price. 200 yuan 打八折 → 160 yuan.

Watch out

- 3/4 is 四分之三; *wrong:* 三分之四 is 4/3.
- *wrong:* 五十百分之 → 百分之五十.
- 打八折 is not "80% off": you pay 80%.





Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 一 + MW + 一 + MW (one by one)

1. Complete: "Please come in one by one." 请一个 …… 地进来。

2. Which phrase is correct?

- A. 一本地一本看
- B. 一本一本地看
- C. 看一本一本
- D. 一本一个地看

3. Build: "The problems have to be solved one at a time."

Put in order: 问题 / 一个一个地 / 要 / 解决。

4. True or false? 一座一座的高楼 uses 的 because it comes before a noun. If false, correct it.

5. Your coach tells you not to rush learning a new dance. Use 一 + MW + 一 + MW. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. Fractions with 分之

6. Write 2/5 in Chinese: ……

7. Look at the chart: 8 of the 40 students cycle. 骑自行车的学生占 ……。(a fraction in Chinese)

8. 全班二十个学生，五个戴眼镜。戴眼镜的学生占百分之多少?

- A. 百分之二十五
- B. 百分之二十
- C. 百分之五

9. A 100-yuan book is 打九折. How much do you pay?

- A. 9 yuan
- B. 90 yuan
- C. 10 yuan

10. Shoes cost 300 yuan and are 打七折. You pay …… yuan. (number)

11. Build: "The shop is having a sale; everything is half price."

Put in order: 商店 / 都打五折。/ 正在打折，/ 所有东西

12. What is 三分之四?

- A. 3.4
- B. 3/4
- C. 4/3
- D. 34%

13. Match each expression to its value.

- (1) 百分之五十
- (2) 四分之一
- (3) 三分之二
- (4) 百分之百
- A. 50%
- B. 1/4
- C. 100%
- D. 2/3

14. True or false? In speech, 一半 is usually used for one half. If false, correct it.

15. Describe the survey chart in two sentences: one fraction with 分之 and one percentage with 占 … 百分之. Say it aloud, then write it. Then describe your own class (invent the numbers). Use Fractions with 分之. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Ten of thirty pupils cycle to school. Write the fraction in Chinese.

17. Say "Please come in one by one."

18. Find and fix the problem. Ten of thirty pupils cycle to school. A classmate writes 三分之十. Correct the fraction.

19. Use it yourself. Say that two of five books are new, and ask people to come in one by one.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 一 + MW + 一 + MW (one by one)

1. 一个

一 + MW + 一 + MW.

2. B. 一本一本地看

Same MW twice, then 地 + verb.

3. 问题要一个一个地解决。

Topic + 要 + 一个一个地 + verb.

4. True.

Before a noun the phrase takes 的; before a verb, 地.

5. Model answer: 别着急，一步一步地学。

Check your answer:

- Use the same measure word in both halves: 一本一本, not 一本一个.
- Put the phrase before the verb: 一个一个地问, not 问一个一个.

■ 2. Fractions with 分之

6. 五分之二

Denominator first: 五分之二.

7. 五分之一

8 ÷ 40 = 1/5 → 五分之一 (= 百分之二十).

8. A. 百分之二十五

5 ÷ 20 = 1/4 = 25% → 百分之二十五.

9. B. 90 yuan

打九折 = pay 9/10 of the price, so 90 yuan.

10. 210

300 × 0.7 = 210 – 打七折 is 30% off.

11. 商店正在打折，所有东西都打五折。

打五折 = half price.

12. C. 4/3

The first number is the denominator: 4/3.

13. (1) A: 百分之五十 = 50%; (2) B: 四分之一 = 1/4; (3) D: 三分之二 = 2/3; (4) C: 百分之百 = 100%

B 分之 A = A/B; 百分之 N = N%.

14. True.

一半的学生 is more natural than 二分之一的学生.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

15. Model answer: 我们班有四十个学生，五分之一的学生走路上学，坐公共汽车的学生最多，占百分之四十。

Check your answer:

- Say the denominator first: 3/4 = 四分之三, not 三分之四 (that is 4/3).
- 50% is 百分之五十, not 五十百分之.

■ Mixed practice

16. 三分之一。The whole (三) comes before 分之, the part (一) after it: ten of thirty is one third.

17. 请一个一个地进来。

18. Ten of thirty is one third: 三分之一. The whole (三) goes before 分之 and the part (一) after it.

19. Model answer. 五本书中有两本是新的，占五分之二。请大家一个一个地进来。

Review later. Tomorrow, give the fraction of boys and girls in your class.

Particles

HSK 4

Three sentence-final particles that change how a sentence sounds. 吗 after a statement checks something you think is true; 吧 used twice weighs two options (去吧，太远；不去吧，又不好意思); and a final 的 makes a statement sound certain: 他会来的.

At a glance

- **1.** Statement + 吗 – yes/no confirmation: 你下个星期就搬家吗?
- **2.** … 吧，… ；… 吧，… – weighing options: 去吧，太远；不去吧，工资又很高。
- **3.** Sentence-final 的 – modal: certainty: 你一定会成功的。

1. Statement + 吗 (yes/no confirmation)

Form: statement + 吗? · negative statement + 吗?

- **你是学生吗?** *Nǐ shì xuésheng ma?* – Are you a student?
- **你下个星期就搬家吗?** – You're moving as soon as next week?
- **你不累吗?** *Nǐ bú lèi ma?* – Aren't you tired?

How it works. 吗 at the end turns a statement into a yes-no question; the word order does not change. Said with surprise, it checks something you heard (你不去吗?). A negative 吗 question often shows surprise or expects "yes".

Answering a negative question. 对 agrees with the statement inside the question, which can feel the opposite of English.

Q: 你不饿吗?	Meaning
对，我不饿。	Right, I'm not hungry.
不，我饿。	No, I am hungry.

Watch out

- One question form at a time. No 吗 after a question word (*wrong:* 你去哪儿吗? unless you mean "anywhere") or after A-not-A (*wrong:* 你去不去吗?).

就 + time … 吗: checking a surprising detail



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. … 吧，… ；… 吧，… (weighing options)

Form: option 1 + 吧，problem；option 2 + 吧，(又) + problem

- **去吧，太远；不去吧，工资又很高。** *Qù ba, tài yuǎn; bú qù ba, gōngzī yòu hěn gāo.* – If I take it, it's too far; if I don't, the pay is high.
- **说吧，怕他生气；不说吧，又觉得不好。** – If I tell him, I'm afraid he'll be angry; if I don't, I feel bad.
- **吃吧，会胖；不吃吧，会饿。** – If I eat it, I'll get fat; if I don't, I'll be hungry.

How it works. This pattern shows a dilemma: two choices, each with a drawback. Here 吧 means "suppose I …", followed by a comma and the problem. 又 in the second half adds "but on the other hand". Keep the two halves parallel.

吧 + comma + problem	sentence + 吧
"if I were to …" (dilemma)	a suggestion: "let's"
去吧，太远	我们走吧

去吧 … 太远: weighing a choice



3. Sentence-final 的 (modal: certainty)

Form: (一定 / 肯定) + 会 / 能 + verb + 的

- **你一定会成功的。** *Nǐ yídìng huì chénggōng de.* – You'll definitely succeed.
- **放心，我不会告诉别人的。** *Fàngxīn, wǒ bú huì gàosu biérén de.* – Don't worry, I won't tell anyone.
- **这个问题能解决的。** – This problem can be solved, I'm sure.

How it works. 的 at the end of a sentence with 会 or 能 makes a judgement, promise or reassurance firmer. The sentence is correct without it; 的 adds certainty.

会 …… 的	是 …… 的
certainty about the future	focus on a detail of a past event
我会来的 (I'll definitely come)	我是昨天来的 (it was yesterday that I came)

一定会 … 的: sure to



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Statement + 吗 (yes/no confirmation)

1. Make a question: "Are you a student?" 你是学生 ……?

2. Which question is correct?

- A. 你明天来吗?
- B. 吗你明天来?
- C. 你去不去吗?
- D. 你什么时候来吗?

3. Q: 你不饿吗? You are not hungry. What do you say?

- A. 对，我饿。
- B. 对，我不饿。
- C. 不，我饿了。
- D. 吗，我不饿。

4. Build: "Aren't you tired?"

Put in order: 累 / 吗? / 你 / 不

5. Your friend mentions she's moving next week, and you can't quite believe it. Use Statement + 吗. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. … 吧，… ；… 吧，… (weighing options)

6. Complete the dilemma: "If I eat it, I'll get fat; if I don't, I'll be hungry." 吃 ……，会胖；不吃吧，会饿。

7. In 去吧，太远；不去吧，又想去, what does the speaker feel?

- A. Torn between two choices
- B. Sure about going
- C. Inviting a friend

- D. Happy to stay at home

8. Build: “If I tell him, I’m afraid he’ll be angry.”

Put in order: 说吧 / ， / 生气。/ 怕他

9. True or false? In the dilemma pattern, 吧 means “let’s”. If false, correct it.

10. You can’t choose between two jobs: one is near home, the other pays more. Use … 吧，… ；… 吧，…. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. Sentence-final 的 (modal: certainty)

11. Reassure: “He’ll definitely come.” 他一定会来 ……。

12. Which sentence focuses on HOW a past event happened?

- A. 我会去的。
- B. 他不会忘的。
- C. 我是坐火车来的。
- D. 你会喜欢的。

13. Build: “Don’t worry, I won’t tell anyone.”

Put in order: ， 我不会 / 放心 / 告诉别人 / 的。

14. True or false? 你会成功 is wrong without 的. If false, correct it.

15. Your friend is nervous about tomorrow’s interview. You are sure it will go well. Use Sentence-final 的. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Choose 吗, 吧 or 的: 你是新来的老师 ……? (you think so and check) / 别担心，他一定会来 ……。(you are sure)

17. Weigh two options with 吧: going is too far; not going is impolite.

18. Someone asks 你不喜欢吗? You do like it. Answer clearly.

19. Find and fix the problem. Someone asks 你不喜欢吗? You do like it, but you answer 对. What has gone wrong?

20. Use it yourself. Ask a friend if they are free tomorrow, then answer that you are not.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Statement + 吗 (yes/no confirmation)

1. 吗

Statement + 吗.

2. A. 你明天来吗?

Only a plain statement takes 吗.

3. B. 对，我不饿。

对 agrees with the negative statement "you're not hungry".

4. 你不累吗?

Negative statement + 吗.

5. Model answer: 你下个星期就搬家吗?

Check your answer:

- No 吗 after a question word: 你去哪儿? , not 你去哪儿吗? (unless it means "anywhere").
- No 吗 after A-not-A: 你去不去? , not 你去不去吗?

■ 2. ... 吧，... ；... 吧，... (weighing options)

6. 吧

Option + 吧, then the problem.

7. A. Torn between two choices

Each option has a drawback: a dilemma.

8. 说吧，怕他生气。

Option + 吧, then the worry.

9. False.

Here it means "suppose I …"; the suggestion 吧 ends a sentence.

10. Model answer: 去吧，太远；不去吧，工资又很高。

Check your answer:

- Keep the two halves parallel: 去吧 …；不去吧 …. Each needs its own problem.
- This 吧 is not a suggestion ("let's"); it means "if I were to …".

■ 3. Sentence-final 的 (modal: certainty)

11. 的

Final 的 adds certainty.

12. C. 我是坐火车来的。

是 … 的 focuses on a detail of a past event.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

13. 放心，我不会告诉别人的。

Promise + 的.

14. False.

的 only adds certainty; the sentence is fine without it.

15. Model answer: 你一定会成功的。

Check your answer:

- This 的 adds certainty to a future or general statement; 是 … 的 focuses on how/when/where a past event happened: 我是坐飞机来的 – "I came by plane."
- Without 的, the sentence is still correct; 的 just makes it more reassuring or firm.

■ Mixed practice

16. 你是新来的老师吗？别担心，他一定会来的。A statement + 吗 checks; 会 …… 的 sounds certain.

17. 去吧，太远了；不去吧，又不太好。Each option takes 吧, and the second often has 又.

18. 不，我很喜欢。Saying 对 would agree with the negative question and mean "right, I don't like it". A full answer avoids the confusion.

19. 对 agrees with the question, so it means "right, I don't like it". Answer with the verb: 不，我很喜欢.

20. Model answer. 你明天有空吗？— 我明天没空。A short full answer is clearer than 对 or 不对.

Review later. Tomorrow, answer three negative questions with full sentences.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Prepositions

HSK 4

Prepositions that set the scene for a sentence. 在 + place + 上/下/里/旁边 gives a physical position; 在 …… 上 can also mean "in terms of" (在学习上); 对 …… 来说 limits a judgement to one person or group; 随着 links one change to another; and 按照 says an action follows a rule or plan. Each phrase comes before the main verb.

At a glance

- **1.** 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 – location: 钥匙在桌子上，手机在包里。
- **2.** 在 … 上 – in terms of / regarding: 他在学习上很努力，在生活上也很独立。
- **3.** 对 … 来说 – for / as far as … is concerned: 对我来说，声调很难。
- **4.** 随着 – as / along with: 随着经济的发展，人们的生活越来越好。
- **5.** 按照 – according to / following: 请按照要求写一篇作文。

1. 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 (location)

Form: 在 + noun + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 · verb + 在 + place

- **钥匙在桌子上，手机在包里。** *Yàoshi zài zhuōzi shang, shǒujī zài bāo li.* – The keys are on the table, and the phone is in the bag.
- **他在图书馆里看书。** – He's reading in the library.
- **把书放在桌子上。** *Bǎ shū fàng zài zhuōzi shang.* – Put the book on the table.

How it works. An ordinary object becomes a place with a location word: 桌子上 (on), 床下 (under), 包里 (in), 门旁边 (beside). The 在 phrase goes before a verb (where it happens) or after 放, 住, 坐 (where it ends up).

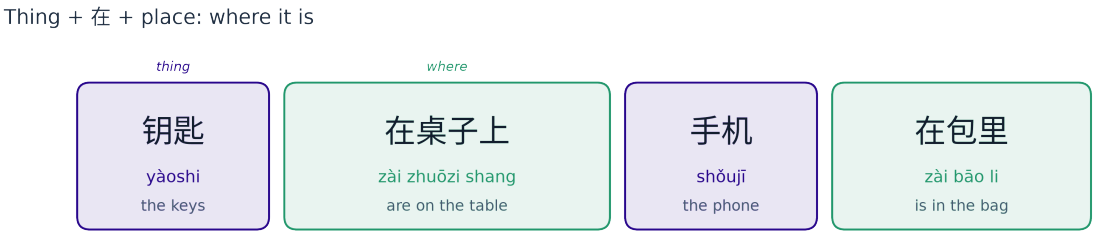
Needs a location word	No location word
ordinary objects: 在书包里	place names and places: 在北京, 在学校

Fixed abstract places: 在网上 (online), 在电视上 (on TV), 在报纸上 (in the newspaper), 在心里, 在生活中.

Watch out

- *wrong:* 在书包 → 在书包里; *wrong:* 在北京里 → 在北京.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn



2. 在 … 上 (in terms of / regarding)

Form: 在 + area + 上 · 在 + process + 中 · 在 + help / conditions + 下

- **他在学习上很努力，在生活上也很独立。** *Tā zài xuéxí shang hěn nǔlì, zài shēnghuó shang yě hěn dúlì.* – He works hard in his studies and is also very independent in daily life.
- **在这个问题上，我们的看法不一样。** – On this question, our views differ.
- **在老师的帮助下，我进步了很多。** – With the teacher's help, I improved a lot.

How it works. With an abstract noun, these frames do not mean physical position.

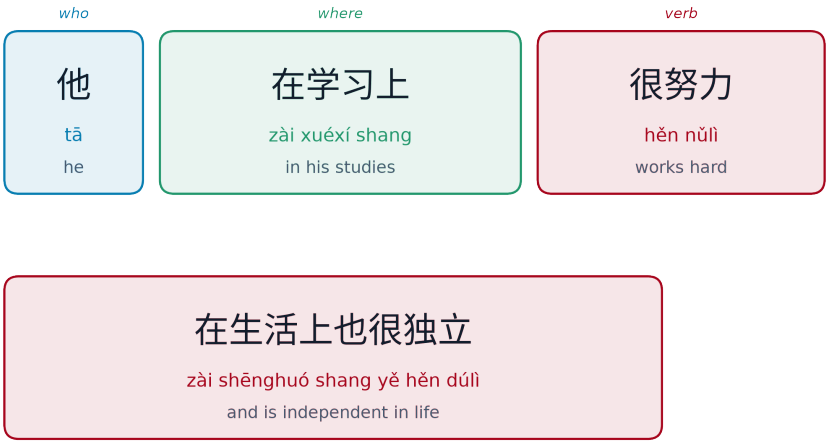
Frame	Meaning	Example
在 …… 上	in terms of an area	在工作上很认真, 在文化上有很多不同
在 …… 中	in the course of	在学习中遇到问题
在 …… 下	under help or conditions	在老师的帮助下

The phrase goes at the start or before the verb.

Watch out

- An area of activity takes 上: *wrong:* 在学习里 → 在学习上.

在 … 上: in terms of …



3. 对 … 来说 (for / as far as … is concerned)

Form: 对 + person / group + 来说，judgement

- **对我来说，声调很难。** *Duì wǒ láishuō, shēngdiào hěn nán.* – For me, tones are hard.
- **对学生来说，时间最重要。** – For students, time is the most important thing.
- **对这个城市来说，旅游很重要。** – Tourism is very important for this city.

How it works. 对 …… 来说 *duì … láishuō* gives the point of view from which something is judged: "for, as far as … is concerned". It usually starts the sentence, followed by a comma and the judgement.

对 …… 来说	在 …… 看来
how it matters to someone	someone's opinion
对我来说很难	在我看来，这个办法不好

Watch out

- Keep all three parts: 对我说 means "said to me".

对 … 来说: for …, as far as … is concerned



4. 随着 (as / along with)

Form: 随着 + gradual change, result (越来越 / 也 / 开始 …)

- **随着经济的发展，人们的生活越来越好。** *Suízhe jīngjì de fāzhǎn, rénmen de shēnghuó yuèláiyuè hǎo.* – As the economy has developed, people's lives have got better and better.
- **随着天气变冷，感冒的人多了起来。** – As the weather turns cold, more people are catching colds.
- **随着时间的推移，城市不断变化。** – As time passes, the city keeps changing.
- **随着年龄的增长，他越来越懂事。** – As he gets older, he's becoming more sensible.

How it works. 随着 *suízhe* "as, along with" links two developments that grow together over time. It takes a noun phrase for a process: 发展, 变化, 时间的推移, 年龄的增长. The result often has 越来越, 也, 开始 or another change word.

因为	随着	自从
a cause	two changes moving together	since one event
因为下雨，比赛取消了	随着网络的普及，网购越来越方便	自从他来了以后 ……

Watch out

- 随着 needs a gradual process, not one single cause or moment.

随着 …: along with (a gradual change)



5. 按照 (according to / following)

Form: subject + 按照 + rule / plan / order + verb

- **请按照要求写一篇作文。** *Qǐng ànzhào yāoqiú xiě yì piān zuòwén.* – Please write an essay following the requirements.
- **我们按照计划出发。** – We set off according to the plan.
- **按照规定，这里不能停车。** – By the rules, you can't park here.

How it works. 按照 says an action follows a rule, plan or order. A noun follows 按照 (规定, 计划, 要求, 顺序, 说明书, 老师说的), and the whole phrase goes before the verb or at the start of the sentence.

按照计划出发	根据天气预报
follow the plan and do it	base what you say on information

Watch out

- *wrong:* 吃这个药按照说明书 → 按照说明书吃这个药.
- To report news or facts, use 根据, not 按照.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 (location)

1. Complete: “The phone is in the bag.” 手机在包 ……。

2. Which is correct?

- A. 他北京在工作。
- B. 他在桌子工作。
- C. 他在北京里工作。
- D. 他在北京工作。

3. Build: “Put the book on the table.”

Put in order: 上。/ 桌子 / 把书 / 放在

4. True or false? 在网上 means “online”. If false, correct it.

5. You can’t find your keys and your roommate helps you look. Use 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 在 ... 上 (in terms of / regarding)

6. Complete: “In terms of work, he is very serious.” 在工作 ……，他很认真。

7. “With the teacher’s help, I improved a lot.” Which fits? 在老师的帮助 _____，我进步了很多。

- A. 下
- B. 里
- C. 上
- D. 中

8. Build: “On this question, our views differ.”

Put in order: ， / 我们的看法 / 不一样。/ 在这个问题上

9. True or false? In 在学习上, 上 means “on top of”. If false, correct it.

10. Your teacher writes a report on your progress this term. Use 在 … 上. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 对 ... 来说 (for / as far as ... is concerned)

11. Complete: “For me, this isn’t a problem.” 对我 ……，这不是问题。

12. What does 他对我说 mean?

- A. In his opinion
- B. As far as I’m concerned
- C. He said to me
- D. For him, I …

13. Build: “For students, time is the most important thing.”

Put in order: 最重要。/ 对学生来说 / ， / 时间

14. True or false? 在我看来 introduces an opinion. If false, correct it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

15. Your classmate finds Chinese tones easy, but you don't. Use 对 … 来说. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 随着 (as / along with)

16. Complete: "As time passes, the city keeps changing." …… 时间的推移，城市不断变化。

17. Which sentence uses 随着 correctly?

- A. 随着他打电话，我出门了。
- B. 随着年龄的增长，他越来越懂事。
- C. 随着下雨，比赛取消了。
- D. 他随着生病，没来上课。

18. Build: "As the weather turns cold, more people catch colds."

Put in order: 随着天气变冷 / 感冒的人 / ， / 多了起来。

19. True or false? 随着 is the best choice for one single cause. If false, correct it.

20. Your grandfather explains how his hometown has changed over forty years. Use 随着. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 按照 (according to / following)

21. Complete: "We set off according to the plan." 我们 …… 计划出发。

22. Build: "Please queue in order."

Put in order: 排队。/ 请 / 顺序 / 按照

23. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 你吃这个药按照说明书。
- B. 你按照说明书吃这个药。
- C. 你吃按照说明书这个药。

24. "According to the news, the road is closed." Which word fits? _____ 新闻，这条路关了。

- A. 按照
- B. 根据

25. True or false? 按照老师说的做 is correct. If false, correct it.

26. You are explaining a school trip to a new student: the class leaves according to the plan at eight, and everyone must sit in order on the bus. Say two sentences with 按照. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

27. Choose 在 …… 上 or 对 …… 来说: …… 学习 ……，他很努力。/ …… 我 ……，这个问题太难了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

28. Say "As the weather gets colder, fewer people swim."

29. Say "The book is on the table and the cat is under it."

30. Find and fix the problem. A classmate thinks 在学习上 means "on top of the study book". What does it mean?

31. Use it yourself. Say that as demand changes, prices change; then say that for you, the plan needs to be better.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 (location)

1. 里

在 + noun + 里 = in.

2. D. 他在北京工作。

Place names take no location word.

3. 把书放在桌子上。

Verb + 在 + noun + 上.

4. True.

It is a fixed abstract location.

5. Model answer: 钥匙在桌子上，手机在包里。

Check your answer:

- Ordinary objects need it: 在书包里, not 在书包.
- Place names never take 里: 在北京, not 在北京里. Places like 学校 can go either way: 在学校 / 在学校里.

■ 2. 在 … 上 (in terms of / regarding)

6. 上

在 + area + 上.

7. A. 下

Help or conditions take 在 … 下.

8. 在这个问题上，我们的看法不一样。

在 … 上 sets the area.

9. False.

It marks an abstract area: in terms of study.

10. Model answer: 他在学习上很努力，在生活上也很独立。

Check your answer:

- Here 上 is not "on top of": 在学习上 is about study as an area, not a physical place.
- Use 上 for an area of activity: 在学习上, not 在学习里.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 对 … 来说 (for / as far as … is concerned)

11. 来说

对 X 来说.

12. C. He said to me

Without 来说, 对 + person + 说 = say to.

13. 对学生来说，时间最重要。

对 X 来说, then the judgement.

14. True.

在 … 看来 = in someone's view.

15. Model answer: 对我来说，声调很难。

Check your answer:

- Use the full frame 对 … 来说: 对我来说, not 对我说 (that means "said to me").
- The judgement follows: 对他来说，这不是问题 – "For him, this isn't a problem."

■ 4. 随着 (as / along with)

16. 随着

随着 + gradual process.

17. B. 随着年龄的增长，他越来越懂事。

随着 links gradual changes, not single events.

18. 随着天气变冷，感冒的人多了起来。

随着 + change, result.

19. False.

False. 随着 describes one thing changing along with another over time: 随着经济的发展，… For one single cause, use 因为 or 由于.

20. Model answer: 随着经济的发展，人们的生活越来越好。

Check your answer:

- 随着 usually goes with a gradual change; for a single event, use 因为 or 自从: 自从他来了以后 ….
- The 随着 phrase may precede the subject or follow it. Choose a complete clause that clearly identifies the accompanying development.

■ 5. 按照 (according to / following)

21. 按照

按照 + 计划 + verb.

22. 请按照顺序排队。

按照 + 顺序 comes before the verb 排队.

23. B. 你按照说明书吃这个药。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

The 按照 phrase comes before the verb.

24. B. 根据

You are reporting information, not following a rule, so 根据 fits.

25. True.

老师说的 (what the teacher said) works as a noun, so it can follow 按照.

26. Model answer: 我们按照计划八点出发。上车以后，请按照顺序坐好。

Check your answer:

- Each 按照 is followed by a rule or plan word and comes before the verb.
- I did not use 按照 to report news or facts.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ Mixed practice

27. 在学习上，他很努力 (in terms of study)。对我来说，这个问题太难了 (for me).

28. 随着天气变冷，游泳的人越来越少了。随着 + a change, then the change that follows it.

29. 书在桌子上，猫在桌子下面。The place comes first, then 上 or 下 (面).

30. 在 …… 上 can mean "in terms of": 在学习上 = as far as studying is concerned. For a real position, say 在桌子上.

31. Model answer. 随着需求的变化，价格也在变化。对我来说，这个计划需要更好一点儿。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 在 …… 上 once for a place and once for an area of life.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Sentence patterns – existence & emphasis

HSK 4

并 + 不/没 is an emphatic "not (as you think)", used to deny something the listener expects or believes: 这个任务并不难 ("it is not hard, as you might think"). It is common in writing and in polite disagreement.

并 + 不 / 没 (emphatic denial)

Form: subject + 并 + 不 / 没 (有) + verb / adjective

- **这次考试并不难。** *Zhè cì kǎoshì bìng bù nán.* – This exam actually wasn't hard.
- **他并没有生气。** *Tā bìng méiyǒu shēngqì.* – He isn't actually angry.
- **大家都以为他是老师，其实他并不是。** *Dàjiā dōu yǐwéi tā shì lǎoshī, qíshí tā bìng bú shì.* – Everyone thought he was a teacher, but actually he isn't.
- **我并没说过这句话。** *Wǒ bìng méi shuōguo zhè jù huà.* – I never said that.
- **贵的东西并不一定好。** *Guì de dōngxi bìng bù yídìng hǎo.* – Expensive things aren't necessarily good.
- **学汉语并没有你想的那么难。** *Xué Hànyǔ bìng méiyǒu nǐ xiǎng de nàme nán.* – Learning Chinese isn't as hard as you think.

How it works. 并 *bìng* goes directly before 不 or 没, and it corrects a belief: "actually not, not at all, contrary to what you think". Use it when someone expects the opposite. For a plain "no", 不 or 没 alone is enough; 并 adds "you have the wrong idea".

That is why 并不 / 并没 often follows a clause with 以为 (wrongly thought), 听说, or 很多人觉得, and often comes with 其实. It is calm, not angry, so it fits writing and polite speech: 这个问题并不复杂 sounds reasonable, not rude.

不难	并不难	又不难
a plain fact	corrects what someone believes	an emotional protest, spoken
这次考试不难。	你以为很难，其实并不难。	这又不难，你为什么不做?

Watch out

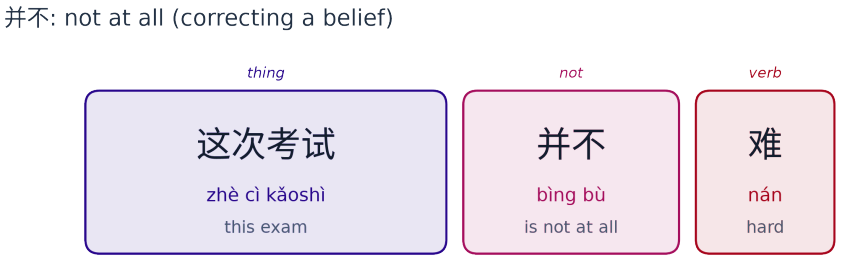
- 并 never stands alone in this meaning: *wrong:* 这次考试并难 → 这次考试并不难.
- 并 comes before 不 / 没, never after: *wrong:* 不并难 → 并不难; *wrong:* 没并去 → 并没去.
- Use it only when there is a belief to correct. Answering "Are you hungry?" with 我并不饿 sounds as if you are denying an accusation; just say 不饿.

In a passage

> 很多人以为当老师很轻松，每年有两个假期。其实当老师并不轻松。假期的时候，老师也要准备新的课，还要参加培训。我妈妈是老师，她并没有很多时间休息，常常工作到晚上十点。

Read and notice. What belief does the writer correct? Find the two sentences with

并, and say which one uses 不 and which uses 没有, and why.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Correct an assumption: "Learning Chinese isn't actually that hard." 学中文 …… 不那么难。

2. Everyone thinks he's angry, but he isn't. Which fits best?

- A. 他没并有生气。
- B. 他很生气。
- C. 他并没有生气。
- D. 他并生气。

3. Build: "I never said that."

Put in order: 我 / 说过 / 并没 / 这句话。

4. True or false? 并不 sounds calmer than 又不. If false, correct it.

5. Everyone assumes the exam was hard because the class looks tired. In fact it was easy. Use 并 + 不 / 没. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Everyone thinks the exam is hard, but you disagree. Which fits best?

- A. 这次考试并不难。
- B. 这次考试很不难。

7. Use 并没: People think he forgot. In fact he didn't.

8. Find and fix the problem. A friend thinks the task is hard. You want to say "It isn't hard at all" and say 这个任务并难. Correct it.

9. Use it yourself. Say you did not forget the meeting; you will just be a little late.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 并

并 + 不 corrects a mistaken belief.

2. C. 他并没有生气。

并没有 corrects the assumption.

3. 我并没说过这句话。

并 + 没 + verb + 过.

4. True.

并不 is calm and written; 又不 is emotional speech.

5. Model answer: 这次考试并不难。

Check your answer:

- Use 并不 / 并没 when someone believes the opposite; for a plain "no", 不 / 没 is enough.
- 并 never stands alone in this sense: 并不难, not 并难.

■ Mixed practice

6. A. 并不难 corrects what people expect; 很不难 sounds unnatural here.

7. 他并没忘，只是太忙了。

8. 并 needs 不 or 没: 这个任务并不难. It denies what the listener expects.

9. Model answer. 我并没有忘记开会，只是会晚一点儿到。

Review later. Tomorrow, correct one wrong idea about you with 并不 or 并没.

Sentence patterns – comparison

HSK 4

以 A 为 B means "take A as B" or "treat A as B": 以学生为中心 (with students at the centre). It is formal and appears in notices, reports and school rules. A is what you choose; B is the role you give it.

以 A 为 B (take A as B)

Form: 以 A 为 B (written) · 以 …… 为主 / 为例 / 为中心 / 为目标

- **南方人以米饭为主食。** *Nánfāng rén yǐ mǐfàn wéi zhǔshí.* – People in the south take rice as their staple food.
- **以北京为例，地铁线路已经超过二十条。** *Yǐ Běijīng wéi lì, dìtiě xiànlù yǐjīng chāoguò èrshí tiáo.* – Take Beijing as an example: it already has more than twenty metro lines.
- **我们的课以口语为主。** *Wǒmen de kè yǐ kǒuyǔ wéi zhǔ.* – Our classes focus mainly on speaking.
- **这个城市以旅游业为中心发展经济。** *Zhège chéngshì yǐ lǚyóuyè wéi zhōngxīn fāzhǎn jīngjì.* – This city develops its economy around tourism.
- **我们以考上大学为目标。** *Wǒmen yǐ kǎoshàng dàxué wéi mùbiāo.* – Our goal is to get into university.
- **这次活动以环保为主题。** *Zhè cì huódòng yǐ huánbǎo wéi zhǔtí.* – The theme of this event is environmental protection.

How it works. 以 A 为 B means "take A as B, treat A as B". 以 introduces A; 为 links it to the role B (主食, 例, 中心, 目标, 主题). It is written style: you meet it in reports, school notices, news and essays, and it lets one compact clause say what everyday speech needs a whole sentence for.

In this pattern 为 is read *wéi* ("as, to be"), not *wèi* ("for"). The most useful forms are fixed, so learn them as chunks.

Fixed form	Meaning	Spoken equivalent
以 …… 为主	mainly …, … above all	主要是 ……
以 …… 为例	take … as an example	比如 ……
以 …… 为中心	with … at the centre	围绕 ……
以 …… 为目标	with … as the goal	目标是 ……
以 …… 为荣	be proud of …	为 …… 感到骄傲

这家店以川菜为主 (written) = 这家店主要做川菜 (spoken).

Watch out

- Keep both halves: *wrong:* 以米饭主食 → 以米饭为主食.
- Read 为 as *wéi* here. 为人民服务 (*wèi*, "serve the people") is a different 为.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

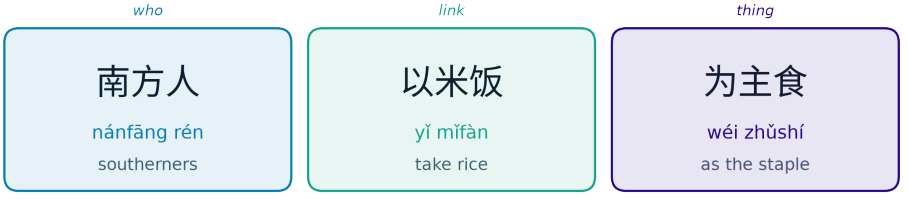
- In casual speech it sounds stiff: say 我们主要练口语, not 我们以口语为主 when chatting with a friend.

In a passage

> 我们学校的暑期课程以实践为主。以科学课为例，学生每周要做两次实验，还要写实验报告。课程以培养学生的动手能力为目标，所以老师讲得少，学生做得多。

Read and notice. Find three different 以 …… 为 …… phrases. Say each one again in spoken Chinese.

以 A 为 B: take A as B



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete (written): “Take Shanghai as an example.” …… 上海为例。

2. How is 为 read in 以米饭为主?

- A. wéi
- B. wěi
- C. wēi
- D. wèi

3. Build: “Our classes focus mainly on speaking.”

Put in order: 以口语 / 为主。/ 我们的课

4. True or false? 这家店主要做川菜 is a spoken way to say 这家店以川菜为主. If false, correct it.

5. You are describing food in different parts of China for a class presentation. Use 以 A 为 B. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我们学校以学生为中心。
- B. 我们学校以学生是中心。
- C. 我们学校为学生以中心。

7. Say formally: “Our course focuses mainly on speaking.” (以 …… 为主)

8. Find and fix the problem. A classmate reads 以安全为重点 as “use safety to make a point”. What does it mean?

9. Use it yourself. Write a school rule: this check takes accuracy as its main goal.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 以

以 A 为例 = take A as an example.

2. A. wéi

In 以 A 为 B ("take A as B"), 为 is read wéi: 以米饭为主 "mainly rice". Read wèi, it means "for", as in 为什么.

3. 我们的课以口语为主。

Topic + 以 A 为主.

4. True.

主要 is the everyday equivalent of 以 … 为主.

5. Model answer: 南方人以米饭为主食。

Check your answer:

- In this pattern 为 is read wéi ("as, to be"), not wèi ("for").
- It is written style; in speech say 主要是 … or 比如 ….

■ Mixed practice

6. A. The pattern is 以 A 为 B: take A as B.

7. 我们的课程以口语为主。以 …… 为主 = mainly ….

8. 以 A 为 B means "take A as B": the main focus is safety.

9. Model answer. 这次检查以准确为主要目标。

Review later. Tomorrow, write one rule with 以 …… 为主 and one with 以 …… 为中心.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Verbs

HSK 4

Verbs that do more than describe an action. 让/叫/请/使 make or ask someone to act; 以为 is a belief that turned out wrong; 好像 says something seems true; 要看 says the answer depends on something; 在于 names what something really comes down to. 通过, 来自 and 来 complete the set.

At a glance

- **1.** 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 – causative: 经理让我通知大家星期五交报告。
- **2.** 来 as a dummy verb – I'll do it: 来一碗牛肉面。
- **3.** 以为 – mistakenly think: 我以为电影是今天!
- **4.** 好像 – it seems / as if: 他好像不太高兴。
- **5.** 要看 / 得看 – it depends on: 去不去要看天气。
- **6.** 在于 – lies in / consists in: 成功的关键在于坚持。
- **7.** 通过 – through / by means of: 我是通过朋友介绍找到这份工作的。
- **8.** 来自 – come from: 这些学生来自十多个国家。

1. 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (causative)

Form: A + 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 + B + verb · 让 / 使 + B + feeling

- **经理让我通知大家星期五交报告。** *Jīnglǐ ràng wǒ tōngzhī dàjiā xīngqīwǔ jiāo bàogào.* – The manager asked me to tell everyone to hand in their reports on Friday.
- **他的话让我很感动。** *Tā de huà ràng wǒ hěn gǎndòng.* – What he said moved me deeply.
- **这个消息使大家非常吃惊。** – The news greatly surprised everyone.
- **医生不让他喝酒。** – The doctor won't let him drink.

How it works. B is the object of the first verb and the doer of the second.

Verb	Use	Register
让	let, make, ask; cause a feeling	everyday
叫	tell someone to	spoken, direct
请	invite, ask politely	polite: 我们想请王教授来做报告
使	cause a change of state	written

不让 / 没让 refuse or didn't ask; 让 …… 别 …… tells someone not to: 妈妈让我别玩手机.

Watch out

- 使 is not for permission: *wrong:* 妈妈使我去 → 妈妈让我去.

- To a teacher, 请您 …… sounds right; 叫您 …… sounds rude.



2. 来 as a dummy verb (I'll do it)

Form: (我) 来 (+ verb) · 来 + amount + item (ordering)

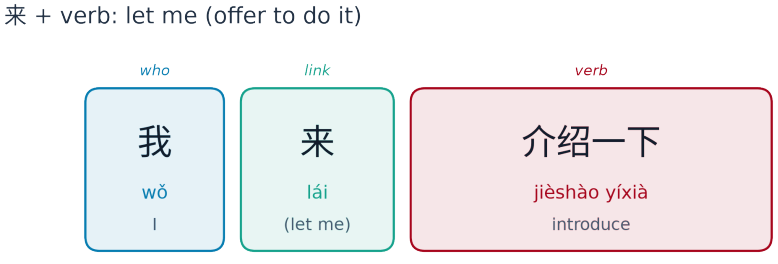
- **我来吧！** *Wǒ lái ba!* – Let me do it!
- **我来付钱！** – Let me pay!
- **我来介绍一下。** – Let me introduce (him).
- **来一碗牛肉面。** *Lái yì wǎn niúròu miàn.* – A bowl of beef noodles, please.

How it works. In casual speech, 来 can stand in for the real action: "let me take care of it". The action is clear from the situation (carrying, paying, introducing). In a restaurant, 来 + amount means "bring me": 来两瓶啤酒, 再来一个!

我来做	我去买
I'll take it on, here	I'll go off and buy it

Watch out

- Here 来 does not mean "come": 我来吧 is "let me do it".



3. 以为 (mistakenly think)

Form: subject + (还) 以为 + belief, (原来 / 没想到) + truth

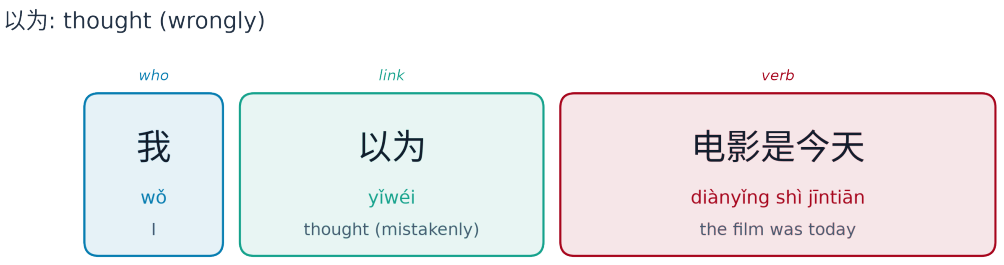
- **我以为电影是今天！** *Wǒ yǐwéi diànyǐng shì jīntiān!* – I thought the film was today! (it wasn't)
- **我以为他是中国人，原来他是日本人。** – I thought he was Chinese, but it turns out he's Japanese.
- **我以为你已经走了，没想到你还在。** – I thought you'd already left; I didn't expect you'd still be here.
- **我还以为你不来了。** – And here I was thinking you weren't coming.

How it works. 以为 *yǐwéi* reports a belief that turned out to be **wrong**. A second clause often gives the truth, with 原来 or 没想到. 还以为 stresses the mistake.

认为	觉得	以为
a considered opinion	feel, think (everyday)	thought, wrongly
我认为这个办法很好	我觉得有点儿冷	我以为你是老师

Watch out

- In a debate, "I think this plan is reasonable" is 我认为 …, not 我以为 ….



4. 好像 (it seems / as if)

Form: subject + 好像 + guess · A + 好像 + B + 一样 (+ adjective)

- **他好像不太高兴。** *Tā hǎoxiàng bú tài gāoxìng.* – He seems a bit unhappy.
- **商店好像关门了。** – It seems the shop is closed.
- **我好像见过他。** – I think I've seen him somewhere.
- **这儿的冬天好像春天一样暖和。** – Winter here is as warm as spring.

How it works. 好像 *hǎoxiàng* gives a soft guess from what you notice: "it seems, apparently". It goes after the subject or at the start (好像要下雨了). With 一样, it compares: "as if, like": 他高兴得好像个孩子一样.

好像	看来	看起来
a soft guess	a conclusion from evidence	an impression from looks
他好像生病了	他没来，看来是生病了	他看起来很累

Watch out

- 好像 is tentative, so not with 一定: *wrong:* 他好像一定病了 → 他好像病了.



5. 要看 / 得看 (it depends on)

Form: undecided matter + 要看 / 得看 + deciding factor

- **去不去要看天气。** *Qù bu qù yào kàn tiānqì.* – Whether we go depends on the weather.
- A: **你明天来吗？** B: **得看情况。** *Děi kàn qíngkuàng.* – "Are you coming tomorrow?" "It depends."
- **成绩好不好，要看你努力不努力。** – Whether your results are good depends on whether you work hard.

How it works. Put what is undecided first, often as A-not-A or with a question word (去不去, 什么时候, 怎么样), then 要看 / 得看 + the factor that decides it. In 得看, 得 is read *děi* ("must").

Spoken	Written
要看 / 得看	取决于
结果要看大家的努力	结果取决于大家的努力

Watch out

- In most speech the undecided part comes first: *wrong:* 要看天气去不去 → 去不去要看天气.

…要看 …: it depends on



6. 在于 (lies in / consists in)

Form: abstract subject (关键 / 问题 / 原因 / 区别) + 在于 + B

- **成功的关键在于坚持。** *Chénggōng de guānjiàn zàiyú jiānchí.* – The key to success lies in perseverance.
- **这两个方法的区别在于速度。** – The difference between the two methods lies in speed.
- **问题在于钱不够。** – The problem is that there isn't enough money.
- **学好外语在于多练习。** – Learning a language well comes down to plenty of practice.

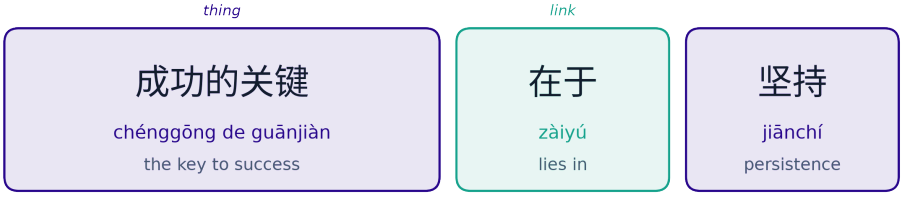
How it works. 在于 *zàiyú* names where the key point, problem, reason or difference lies. The subject is abstract, and the style is formal. In speech, 主要是 …… often replaces it: 问题主要是时间不够.

在 + place	是	在于
be located	states identity	stresses where the point lies
他在北京	关键是坚持	关键在于坚持

Watch out

- Not for places: *wrong:* 他在于北京 → 他在北京.

A 在于 B: A lies in B



7. 通过 (through / by means of)

Form: 通过 + means, subject + result · subject + 通过 + exam / place

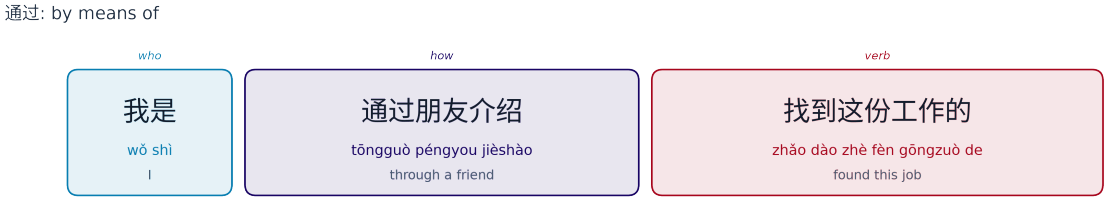
- **我是通过朋友介绍找到这份工作的。** *Wǒ shì tōngguò péngyou jièshào zhǎodào zhè fèn gōngzuò de.* – I found this job through a friend's introduction.
- **通过这次活动，大家互相了解了。** – Through this event, everyone got to know each other.
- **他通过了考试。** *Tā tōngguòle kǎoshì.* – He passed the exam.
- **车子通过了大桥。** – The car crossed the bridge.

How it works. Before a verb or at the start, 通过 means "through, by means of": how a result is reached. As a verb, it means "pass" (an exam, a test, a vote) or "go through" a place.

通过	经过
the means	a process gone through
通过网络买票	经过三年的努力

Watch out

- After a 通过 phrase, the result still needs a subject: *wrong:* 通过学习，使我进步了 → 通过学习，我进步了很多. This is a classic exam trap.



8. 来自 (come from)

Form: subject + 来自 + place / source (formal)

- **这些学生来自十多个国家。** *Zhèxiē xuésheng láizì shí duō ge guójiā.* – These students come from more than ten countries.
- **她来自北京大学。** – She is from Peking University.
- **这个消息来自一家报纸。** – This news comes from a newspaper.
- **他的压力主要来自工作。** – His stress comes mainly from work.

How it works. 来自 *láizì* "come from" is the formal alternative to 从 …… 来. The place or source follows directly. It suits introductions and writing; in conversation, 我是从中国来的 or 我是中国人 is more natural.

Watch out

- No 从 and no 来 at the end: *wrong:* 来自从中国, *wrong:* 来自中国来 → 来自中国.

来自: come from (formal)



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (causative)

1. Complete: “His words moved me deeply.” 他的话 …… 我很感动。

2. You invite your professor to give a talk. Which verb fits? 我们想 _____ 王教授来做报告。

- A. 叫
- B. 使
- C. 请
- D. 让

3. Build: “The doctor won’t let him drink.”

Put in order: 医生 / 喝酒。 / 他 / 不让

4. True or false? 使 is the usual verb for giving permission in conversation. If false, correct it.

5. Your manager wants the report by Friday and tells you to inform the team. Use 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 来 as a dummy verb (I’ll do it)

6. Offer to pay: “Let me pay!” 我 …… 付钱!

7. In a restaurant, what does 来两瓶啤酒 mean?

- A. Two bottles of beer are coming.
- B. Two bottles of beer, please.
- C. Beer comes in two bottles.
- D. Come and drink two beers.

8. Build: “Let me introduce (him/her) briefly.”

Put in order: 来 / 介绍 / 我 / 一下。

9. True or false? 我来吧 here means “let me come”. If false, correct it.

10. Your grandmother is struggling with a heavy box. You step in. Use 来 as a dummy verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 以为 (mistakenly think)

11. Complete: “I thought you were a teacher (but you’re not).” 我 …… 你是老师。

12. In a debate: “I think this plan is reasonable.” Which verb fits?

- A. 原来
- B. 认为
- C. 以为
- D. 好像

13. Build: “I thought you’d already left.”

Put in order: 你 / 已经 / 我以为 / 走了。

14. True or false? 我还以为你不来了 suggests the speaker was wrong. If false, correct it.

15. You arrive at the cinema and the staff tell you your film was yesterday. Use 以为. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 好像 (it seems / as if)

16. Complete: “It seems the shop is closed.” 商店 …… 关门了。

17. Which sentence is natural?

- A. 他好像生病了。
- B. 好像他一定生病。
- C. 他好像一定生病了。
- D. 他生病好像了。

18. Build: “Winter here is as warm as spring.”

Put in order: 这儿的冬天 / 好像春天 / 暖和。/ 一样

19. True or false? 我好像见过他 means “I think I’ve seen him before.” If false, correct it.

20. Your roommate has been quiet all evening and didn’t eat dinner. Use 好像. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 要看 / 得看 (it depends on)

21. Complete: “Whether we go depends on the weather.” 去不去 …… 天气。

22. How is 得 read in 得看情况?

- A. děi

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. dé
- C. de
- D. dì

23. Build: “Whether your results are good depends on whether you work hard.”

Put in order: 成绩好不好 / 要看你 / 努力不努力。/ ,

24. True or false? 取决于 is the formal written equivalent of 要看. If false, correct it.

25. Your friend asks if the hike is still on for Saturday. Use 要看 / 得看. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 在于 (lies in / consists in)

26. Complete: “The problem lies in a lack of money.” 问题 …… 钱不够。

27. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我的家在于上海。
- B. 他在于学校学习。
- C. 在于他是老师。
- D. 成功的关键在于努力。

28. Build: “The difference lies in speed.”

Put in order: 在于 / 速度。/ 区别

29. True or false? 关键是坚持 and 关键在于坚持 have similar meanings. If false, correct it.

30. In an interview, a famous athlete is asked why she keeps winning. Use 在于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 通过 (through / by means of)

31. Complete: “Through this event, everyone got to know each other.” …… 这次活动，大家互相了解了。

32. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 通过学习，使我进步了很多。
- B. 我通过学习使进步了。
- C. 通过学习，进步了很多使我。
- D. 通过学习，我进步了很多。

33. Build: “He passed the exam.”

Put in order: 考试。/ 通过了 / 他

34. True or false? 经过 stresses a process; 通过 stresses the means. If false, correct it.

35. A friend asks how you got your new job so quickly. Use 通过. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 来自 (come from)

36. Complete (formal introduction): “She comes from Canada.” 她 …… 加拿大。

37. Which is correct?

- A. 他从来自英国。
- B. 他来自英国来。
- C. 他来自从英国。
- D. 他来自英国。

38. Build: “His stress comes mainly from work.”

Put in order: 来自 / 主要 / 工作。/ 他的压力

39. True or false? 来自 sounds more formal than 是从 … 来的. If false, correct it.

40. Your summer camp has students from all over the world. Use 来自. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

41. Choose 以为 or 觉得: 我 …… 今天会下雨，结果是晴天。

42. Say “Whether we go depends on the weather.”

43. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 通过这次活动，使学生更有信心了。
- B. 这次活动使学生更有信心了。
- C. 这次活动使更有信心学生了。

44. Find and fix the problem. A notice says 通过这次活动，使学生更自信了. Give two ways to correct it.

45. Use it yourself. Say that whether you go depends on the weather, and that you thought it would rain, but it didn’t.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (causative)

1. 让

让/使 + person + feeling.

2. C. 请

请 is the polite invitation.

3. 医生不让他喝酒。

A + 不让 + B + verb.

4. False.

Permission is 让; 使 is formal and causes a change.

5. Model answer: 经理让我通知大家星期五交报告。

Check your answer:

- 请 is for polite invitations; to your teacher, 请您 … sounds right, 叫您 … sounds rude.
- 使 needs a cause and a change of state, usually in writing; do not use it for permission: 妈妈让我去, not 妈妈使我去.

■ 2. 来 as a dummy verb (I'll do it)

6. 来

我来 + verb = let me do it.

7. B. Two bottles of beer, please.

来 + item = bring me / I'll have.

8. 我来介绍一下。

我来 + verb + 一下.

9. False.

It means "let me (do it)".

10. Model answer: 我来吧!

Check your answer:

- This 来 is spoken; the real action must be clear from context (carrying, paying, ordering).
- It does not mean "come" here: 我来吧 is "let me (do it)", not "let me come".

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 以为 (mistakenly think)

11. 以为

以为 marks a mistaken belief.

12. B. 认为

A considered opinion takes 认为; 以为 suggests a mistake.

13. 我以为你已经走了。

以为 + mistaken belief.

14. True.

The person did come; the belief was mistaken.

15. Model answer: 我以为电影是今天!

Check your answer:

- For a considered opinion, use 认为: 我认为这个办法很好 – "I think this method is good." 以为 suggests the belief was wrong.
- Do not use 以为 for a correct belief that you are stating as fact.

■ 4. 好像 (it seems / as if)

16. 好像

好像 + guess.

17. A. 他好像生病了。

好像 is tentative and does not combine with 一定.

18. 这儿的冬天好像春天一样暖和。

A + 好像 + B + 一样 + Adj.

19. True.

好像 softens the memory into a guess.

20. Model answer: 他好像不太高兴。

Check your answer:

- 好像 softens what you say; do not pair it with 一定 (certainly): 他好像病了, not 他好像一定病了.
- For a looks-based impression, 看起来 is also possible: 他看起来很累 – "He looks tired."

■ 5. 要看 / 得看 (it depends on)

21. 要看

Undecided matter + 要看 + factor.

22. A. děi

Here 得 means "must, have to" and is read děi: 得看情况 "It depends on the situation." As a particle after a verb it is de; dé means "obtain".

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

23. 成绩好不好，要看你努力不努力。

Undecided matter + 要看 + factor.

24. True.

结果取决于 … = the result depends on ….

25. Model answer: 去不去要看天气。

Check your answer:

- Put the undecided matter first, then 要看 + factor: 去不去要看天气, not 要看天气去不去 in most speech.
- In 得看, 得 is read děi ("must"), not de.

■ 6. 在于 (lies in / consists in)

26. 在于

Abstract subject + 在于 + where it lies.

27. D. 成功的关键在于努力。

成功的关键在于努力 is right: 在于 means "lies in" and links an abstract subject (关键, 问题) to its cause. It does not mean "is in" a place, so it cannot replace 在.

28. 区别在于速度。

A + 在于 + B.

29. True.

在于 stresses that the point lies there; 是 states it.

30. Model answer: 成功的关键在于坚持。

Check your answer:

- 在于 needs an abstract subject (key, problem, difference); not 他在于北京 for "he is in Beijing".
- It is formal; in speech, 主要是 … often replaces it: 问题主要是时间不够 – "The main problem is that there is not enough time."

■ 7. 通过 (through / by means of)

31. 通过

通过 + means, then the result.

32. D. 通过学习，我进步了很多。

The result clause needs its own subject; 通过 …，使 … has none.

33. 他通过了考试。

通过 as a verb = pass.

34. True.

That is the key difference.

35. Model answer: 我是通过朋友介绍找到这份工作的。

Check your answer:

- A sentence starting with 通过 … still needs a subject in the result: 通过学习，我进步了, not 通过学习，使我进步了.
- That missing-subject error is a classic exam trap: after 通过 / 经过 …, check that the main clause has a subject.

■ 8. 来自 (come from)

36. 来自

来自 + place.

37. D. 他来自英国。

来自 takes the place directly.

38. 他的压力主要来自工作。

Subject + 主要 + 来自 + source.

39. True.

来自 suits introductions and writing.

40. Model answer: 这些学生来自十多个国家。

Check your answer:

- Say 来自中国, not 来自从中国 or 来自中国来.
- 来自 is formal; in conversation, 我是从中国来的 or 我是中国人 is more natural.

■ Mixed practice

41. 我以为今天会下雨，结果是晴天。以为 is for a belief that turned out to be wrong.

42. 去不去要看天气。要看 + the deciding thing.

43. B. 使 needs a subject (这次活动). A has no subject, because 通过 turns 这次活动 into a phrase.

44. The sentence has no subject. Drop 通过: 这次活动使学生更自信了. Or drop 使: 通过这次活动，学生更自信了.

45. Model answer. 去不去要看天气。我以为今天会下雨，结果没有下。以为 shows the belief was wrong.

Review later. Tomorrow, write one sentence with 让 and one with 以为.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Auxiliary verbs

HSK 4

Two verbs for duty. 得 (děi) means “must, have to” and is common in speech: 我得走了. 不用 means “don’t need to”; it removes a duty and does not forbid anything. Note that the negative of 得 (děi) is 不用, not 不得.

At a glance

- **1.** 不用 – don’t need to: 不用给钱，我请客。
- **2.** 得 (děi) – must / have to: 我得走了，今天晚上得写完论文。

1. 不用 (don’t need to)

Form: 不用 + verb (no need to) · 不用了

- **不用给钱，我请客。** *Búyòng gěi qián, wǒ qǐngkè.* – You don’t need to pay; it’s on me.
- **你不用早来。** – You don’t need to come early.
- A: **谢谢！** B: **不用谢。** – “Thanks!” “No need to thank me.”
- A: **要我帮忙吗？** B: **不用了，谢谢。** – “Shall I help?” “No need, thanks.”

How it works. 不用 *búyòng* + verb means “there’s no need to”. It is the usual negative of 要 or 得 *děi* (must) when something is unnecessary.

不用 + verb	别 + verb	不能 + verb
no need to (kind, light)	don’t (an order)	mustn’t, not allowed
不用去了	别去！	这里不能拍照

Watch out

- 不用 + noun can mean “not use”: 不用筷子. Check whether a verb or a noun follows.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 得 (děi) (must / have to)

Form: subject + 得 (děi) + verb · 不用 (don't have to)

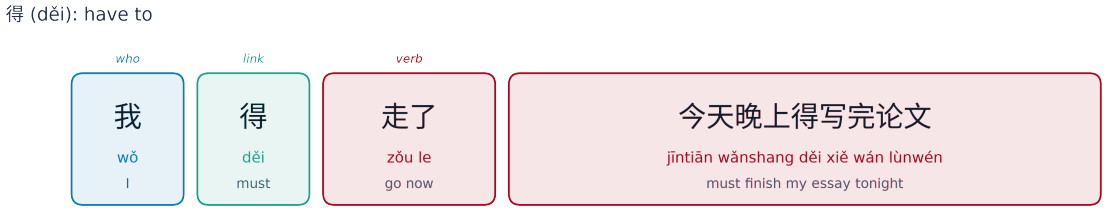
- **我得走了。** *Wǒ děi zǒu le.* – I have to go now.
- **明天有考试，我得复习。** *Míngtiān yǒu kǎoshì, wǒ děi fùxí.* – There's an exam tomorrow; I have to revise.
- **这件事得问老师。** – We'll have to ask the teacher about this.
- **你不用来。** – You don't have to come.

How it works. Before a verb, 得 is read *děi* and means "must, have to" in casual speech.

得 *děi*	要	必须
casual "have to"	need to, will	stronger, formal
我得走了	我要去银行	你必须带身份证

Watch out

- "Don't have to" is 不用, never *wrong:* 不得.
- After a verb, 得 is the particle *de*: 他跑得很快.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 不用 (don't need to)

1. Reassure: "You don't need to come early." 你 …… 早来。

2. A sign says you mustn't take photos. Which fits? 这里 _____ 拍照。

- A. 不用
- B. 没用
- C. 不得不
- D. 不能

3. Build: "No need, thanks."

Put in order: ， / 谢谢。/ 不用了

4. True or false? 不用去了 sounds lighter than 别去. If false, correct it.

5. You take a friend to lunch, and she reaches for her wallet. Use 不用. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 得 (děi) (must / have to)

6. Complete (spoken): "I have to go now." 我 …… 走了。

7. Which says "You don't have to come"?

- A. 你不用来。
- B. 你不必须来。
- C. 你不得来。
- D. 你得不来。

8. Build: "There's an exam tomorrow; I have to revise."

Put in order: 明天有考试 / ， / 复习。/ 我得

9. True or false? In 他跑得很快, 得 is read děi. If false, correct it.

10. It is 9 p.m. and you still have an essay due tomorrow morning. Use 得. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Translate: 你不用来。

12. Say "I have to leave early; you don't need to come with me."

13. Find and fix the problem. A classmate translates 你不用来 as "You must not come". Correct the translation.

14. Use it yourself. Say you have to leave early, and your friend doesn't need to come with you.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 不用 (don't need to)

1. 不用

不用 + verb = no need to.

2. D. 不能

Prohibition is 不能; 不用 means no need.

3. 不用了，谢谢。

A polite refusal.

4. True.

不用 says it is unnecessary; 别 is an order.

5. Model answer: 不用给钱，我请客。

Check your answer:

- 不用 + Verb means "no need to"; "mustn't" is 不能 / 不可以: 这里不能抽烟 – "You cannot smoke here."
- 不用 + noun can mean "don't use": 不用筷子 – "not use chopsticks". Check whether a verb or noun follows.

■ 2. 得 (děi) (must / have to)

6. 得

得 (děi) + verb = must.

7. A. 你不用来。

The negative of 得 (must) is 不用.

8. 明天有考试，我得复习。

Reason, then 得 + verb.

9. False.

After a verb, 得 is the particle de.

10. Model answer: 我得走了，今天晚上得写完论文。

Check your answer:

- "Don't have to" is 不用, never 不得: 你不用来, not 你不得来.
- Read it děi only before a verb meaning "must"; after a verb (跑得快) it is the particle de.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

11. You don't need to come. (It does not mean "you must not come": that is 你别来 or 你不能来.)

12. 我得早点儿走，你不用跟我一起去。

13. It means "You don't need to come." 不用 removes a duty. To forbid, say 你别来 or 你不能来.

14. Model answer. 我得早点儿走，你不用跟我一起去。得 is read děi here.

Review later. Tomorrow, tell a partner two things you have to do (得) and one they don't need to do (不用).

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Verb phrases

HSK 4

Verb phrases that change what a verb means. 多/少 + verb gives advice (多喝水); 值得 says something is worth doing; 害得 blames someone for a bad result; 由 names who does a job; and Verb + 到 says how long an action lasts. Separable verbs such as 见面 and 睡觉 split around other words: 见过一次面.

At a glance

- **1.** 少 + Verb – do less: 你应该少吃甜的，多运动。
- **2.** 多 + Verb – do more: 大家要多喝水，多休息。
- **3.** 值得 + Verb – worth doing: 故宫很值得去。
- **4.** 害得 – cause sb to suffer: 你害得我迟到了!
- **5.** 由 + Person + Verb – done by: 这次活动由小王负责。
- **6.** 并 / 并且 – combining verbs: and: 会议讨论并通过了新的计划。
- **7.** 从来 + 不 / 没 – never: 我从来没去过新疆。
- **8.** Verb + 到 + Time / Event – until: 她昨天工作到凌晨三点。
- **9.** V 着 V 着就 … 了 – while …-ing, suddenly: 他看着看着就睡着了。
- **10.** Separable verbs – 离合词: 我理了一次发，游了两次泳。

1. 少 + Verb (do less)

Form: 少 + verb (+ amount)

- **你应该少吃甜的，多运动。** *Nǐ yīnggāi shǎo chī tián de, duō yùndòng.* – You should eat less sugar and exercise more.
- **少玩手机。** – Play less on your phone.
- **少放一点儿盐。** – Put in a little less salt.
- **你少说两句吧!** – Stop talking!

How it works. 少 *shǎo* goes directly **before** the verb, like an adverb: do less of it. An amount comes after the verb: 少吃一点儿, 少喝两杯. 你少说两句 is a firm "stop talking".

少吃肉	不吃肉	吃少了
eat less meat	eat no meat	ate too little

Watch out

- "Eat less" is 少吃, not *wrong:* 吃少.

少 / 多 + verb: do less / more of



2. 多 + Verb (do more)

Form: (要) 多 + verb (+ amount)

- **大家要多喝水，多休息。** *Dàjiā yào duō hē shuǐ, duō xiūxi.* – Everyone should drink more water and rest more.
- **多练习口语。** – Practise speaking more.
- **多穿一件衣服，外面很冷。** – Put on an extra layer; it's cold outside.
- **我多买了两个。** – I bought two extra.

How it works. 多 *duō* goes directly **before** the verb: do more of it. It is common in advice, often after 要. An extra amount goes after the verb: 多住几天 (stay a few more days).

多 + verb	很多 + noun
do more (advice)	a lot of
多看书	看了很多书

Watch out

- "Practise more" is 多练习, not *wrong:* 练习多.

要 + 多 + verb: should do more



3. 值得 + Verb (worth doing)

Form: A + (很) 值得 + verb · (不) 值得

- **故宫很值得去。** *Gùgōng hěn zhíde qù.* – The Forbidden City is well worth a visit.
- **这部电影值得看。** – This film is worth seeing.
- **这个问题值得我们讨论。** – This question deserves our discussion.
- **为这点儿小事生气，不值得。** – It's not worth getting angry over something so small.

How it works. 值得 *zhíde* + verb means "worth doing". What is worth it comes first. 很 or 非常 can go before it; the negative is 不值得. 值得一去 is a fixed phrase: "worth a trip".

值 + amount	值得 + verb
worth (money)	worth doing
这块手表值一万块	值得学习

Watch out

- *wrong:* 值得这本书看 → 这本书值得看.
- *wrong:* 没值得 → 不值得.



4. 害得 (cause sb to suffer)

Form: cause + 害得 + person + bad result

- **你害得我迟到了！** *Nǐ hài de wǒ chídào le!* – You made me late!
- **堵车害得我们迟到了。** – The traffic jam made us late.
- **这场大雨害得我们在机场等了五个小时。** – This rainstorm made us wait five hours at the airport.
- **你不回消息，害得我很担心。** – You didn't reply, and it made me worried.

How it works. 害得 *hài de* blames someone or something for a bad result. The person who suffers follows 害得, then the result. The cause can be a person or a thing.

让 / 使	害得
neutral, any result	blame, bad results only
这个消息让我很难过	你害得我很难过

Watch out

- Not for good outcomes: 他的话让我很高兴.
- *wrong:* 害得迟到我 → 害得我迟到.

害得 + person + result: it's your fault that



5. 由 + Person + Verb (done by)

Form: task + 由 + person + verb · A + 由 + parts + 组成

- **这次活动由小王负责。** *Zhè cì huódòng yóu Xiǎo Wáng fùzé.* – Xiao Wang is in charge of this event.
- **这件事由我来处理。** – This matter will be handled by me.
- **会议由校长主持。** – The meeting is chaired by the head teacher.
- **这个队由十个人组成。** – The team is made up of ten people.

How it works. 由 *yóu* + person names who is responsible for a task. The task comes first as the topic, and the sentence usually needs no 了 or result word. 由 …… 组成 means "be made up of". In writing, 由 can also mean "from": 由北京出发.

由	被
who is responsible	something done to the subject, often bad
晚饭由我做	他被老师批评了

Watch out

- 由于 is a different word: "due to, because of".

由 + person + 负责: handled by



6. 并 / 并且 (combining verbs: and)

Form: subject + verb phrase$_1$ + 并 / 并且 + verb phrase$_2$ (written)

- **会议讨论并通过了新的计划。** *Huìyì tǎolùn bìng tōngguòle xīn de jìhuà.* – The meeting discussed and approved the new plan.
- **请阅读通知，并签名。** – Please read the notice and sign it.
- **请填写这张表，并交给前台。** – Please fill in this form and hand it to reception.
- **公司调查了这个问题，并且找到了原因。** – The company investigated the problem and found the cause.

How it works. 并 / 并且 join two actions done by the same subject, often one after the other: "and (also)". It is written style, common in minutes, reports and formal notices.

并 + verb	并 + 不 / 没
"and"	"actually not"
讨论并通过	他并不知道

Watch out

- They join verb phrases, not nouns: *wrong:* 老师并学生 → 老师和学生.

并: and (joining two verbs, written)



7. 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

Form: 从来没 (有) + verb + 过 (never once) · 从来不 + verb (never, as a habit)

- **我从来没去过新疆。** *Wǒ cónglái méi qùguo Xīnjiāng.* – I've never been to Xinjiang.
- **我从来没听说过这个地方。** – I've never heard of this place.
- **他从来没迟到过。** – He has never once been late.
- **他从来不喝咖啡。** – He never drinks coffee.

How it works. 从来 stresses the whole of the past. For experience: 从来没 + verb + 过. For a habit or rule: 从来不 + verb.

还没去过	从来没去过	一直没
not yet (but might)	never once	not all this time (a specific wait)
我还没去过西安	我从来没去过新疆	他一直没回我消息

Watch out

- Do not mix the two: *wrong:* 他从来不去过 → 他从来没去过.



8. Verb + 到 + Time / Event (until)

Form: verb + 到 + time / event · verb + object + verb + 到 + time

- **她昨天工作到凌晨三点。** *Tā zuótiān gōngzuò dào língchén sān diǎn.* – She worked until three in the morning yesterday.
- **我睡到十点。** – I slept until ten.
- **我们等到雨停了才出发。** – We waited until the rain stopped before setting off.
- **他看书看到半夜。** – He read until midnight.

How it works. 到 + end point goes right after the verb: do something until then. The end can be a time or an event (一直工作到退休). With an object, repeat the verb (看书看到很晚) or put the object first (书看到很晚).

Verb + 到	直到 …… 才 ……
a neutral end point	something happened only that late
玩到十点	直到十点他才回家

Watch out

- 到十点睡 means “go to bed at ten”. “Sleep until ten” is 睡到十点.

Verb + 到 + time: until



9. V 着 V 着就 … 了 (while …-ing, suddenly)

Form: subject + verb 着 verb 着，就 + new event + 了

- **他看着看着就睡着了。** *Tā kànzhe kànzhe jiù shuìzháo le.* – He was watching, and then he fell asleep.
- **我们走着走着就迷路了。** – We were walking along, and before we knew it we were lost.
- **孩子玩着玩着就笑了起来。** – While playing, the child started laughing.
- **他走着走着就到了。** – He walked on, and soon he was there.

How it works. The repeated verb + 着 shows an action going on for a while; then something new slips in without any plan. It tells a past story, so the second part ends with 了. Use a one-syllable verb.

一边 …… 一边 ……	V 着 V 着就 ……
two planned actions at once	a new event slips in
一边吃一边看	吃着吃着就睡着了

Watch out

- *wrong:* 看看着着 → 看着看着.

V着V着: while doing it, something else happens



10. Separable verbs (离合词)

Form: verb + (了 / 过 / amount / 的) + object part · 跟 / 给 + person + separable verb

- **我理了一次发，游了两次泳。** *Wǒ lǐle yí cì fà, yóule liǎng cì yǒng.* – I had my hair cut once and went swimming twice.
- **我们见过面。** *Wǒmen jiànguo miàn.* – We have met before.
- **我想跟你见面。** – I'd like to meet you.
- **你能帮我一个忙吗?** – Could you do me a favour?

How it works. Some words are really verb + object in one word (离合词): 游泳 (swim + swimming), 见面 (see + face), 睡觉, 帮忙, 结婚, 生气, 上课, 毕业, 洗澡, 唱歌, 跳舞. Words like 了, 过, amounts and 的 go **between** the two parts: 见了面, 睡了八个小时觉, 唱了一首歌, 结过两次婚, 生他的气 (be angry with him).

Because they already contain an object, they cannot take a second one. Bring the person in with 跟 or 给.

Wrong	Right
wrong: 见面他	跟他见面
wrong: 帮忙我	帮我一个忙 / 给我帮忙
wrong: 睡觉了八个小时	睡了八个小时觉 / 睡觉睡了八个小时

A split verb: the count goes in the middle



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 少 + Verb (do less)

1. Advise: "Play less on your phone." …… 玩手机。

2. What does 我吃少了 mean?

- A. I should eat less.
- B. I ate less than before on purpose.
- C. I ate too little.
- D. I don't eat.

3. Build: "Put in a little less salt."

Put in order: 一点儿 / 盐。/ 放 / 少

4. True or false? 少吃肉 means "don't eat meat at all". If false, correct it.

5. Your doctor looks at your test results and gives you some advice. Use 少 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 多 + Verb (do more)

6. Advise: "Practise speaking more." …… 练习口语。

7. Which says "Stay a few more days"?

- A. 住几天多。
- B. 很多住几天。
- C. 住多几天。
- D. 多住几天。

8. Build: "Put on an extra layer."

Put in order: 一件 / 衣服。/ 多 / 穿

9. True or false? In 看了很多书, 很多 describes the books. If false, correct it.

10. Your PE teacher gives the class some advice before the fitness test. Use 多 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 值得 + Verb (worth doing)

11. Complete: "This film is worth seeing." 这部电影 …… 看。

12. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 这个地方去值得。
- B. 值得这个地方去。
- C. 这个地方值得去。
- D. 这个地方没值得去。

13. Build: "It's not worth getting angry."

Put in order: 生气 / 不 / 值得。/ ，

14. True or false? 这块手表值一万块 uses 值 for a money value. If false, correct it.

15. A friend asks whether the Forbidden City is worth the long queue. Use 值得 + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. 害得 (cause sb to suffer)

16. Blame: "You made me miss the film!" 你 …… 我没看上电影！

17. Which sentence is natural?

- A. 堵车害得我们迟到了。
- B. 老师的表扬害得我很高兴。
- C. 他害得我考了第一名。
- D. 好天气害得我们去爬山。

18. Build: "You didn't reply, and it made me worried."

Put in order: 很担心。/ ， / 你不回消息 / 害得我

19. True or false? 害得 adds blame that 让 does not. If false, correct it.

20. Your brother hid your alarm clock as a joke, and you missed your train. Use 害得. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 由 + Person + Verb (done by)

21. Complete: "This matter will be handled by me." 这件事 …… 我来处理。

22. Which says "He was criticised by the teacher"?

- A. 他被老师批评了。
- B. 他由老师批评了。
- C. 他由批评老师。
- D. 老师由他批评。

23. Build: "The team is made up of ten people."

Put in order: 组成。/ 由十个人 / 这个队

24. True or false? 由北京出发 means "set off from Beijing". If false, correct it.

25. Your teacher divides the work for the class trip. Use 由 + Person + Verb. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 并 / 并且 (combining verbs: and)

26. Complete (written): "Please read the notice and sign it." 请阅读通知，…… 签名。

27. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我并买了苹果并香蕉。
- B. 我买了苹果并香蕉。
- C. 我买了并苹果和香蕉。

- D. 我买了苹果和香蕉。

28. Build: “The meeting discussed and approved the plan.”

Put in order: 并通过了 / 讨论 / 会议 / 计划。

29. True or false? In 他并不知道, 并 means “and”. If false, correct it.

30. You are writing the minutes of a school meeting. Use 并 / 并且. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

31. Complete: “I’ve never heard of this place.” 我从来没听说 …… 这个地方。

32. You plan to visit Xi’an next month but haven’t been yet. Which fits?

- A. 我一直去西安。
- B. 我还没去过西安。
- C. 我上个月去过西安。
- D. 我从来不去西安。

33. Build: “I’ve never been to Xinjiang.”

Put in order: 新疆。/ 从来没 / 我 / 去过

34. True or false? 他从来不去过 is correct. If false, correct it.

35. Friends are planning a trip to Xinjiang and ask whether you know the region. Use 从来 + 不 / 没. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. Verb + 到 + Time / Event (until)

36. Complete: “I slept until ten.” 我睡 …… 十点。

37. Which says “He read until midnight”?

- A. 他看到书半夜。
- B. 他半夜到看书。
- C. 他看书看到半夜。
- D. 他到半夜看书。

38. Build: “He kept working until he retired.”

Put in order: 退休。/ 一直 / 工作到 / 他

39. True or false? 到十点睡 means “sleep until ten”. If false, correct it.

40. Your roommate had a deadline and you could see her light under the door. Use Verb + 到 + Time / Event. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. V 着 V 着就 ... 了 (while ...-ing, suddenly)

41. Complete: “While reading, she fell asleep.” 她看着看着 …… 睡着了。

42. Which form is correct?

- A. 他走着走着就到了。
- B. 他着走着走就到了。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- C. 他走走着着就到了。
- D. 他走着就走着到了。

43. Build: “We were walking, and before we knew it we were lost.”

Put in order: 我们 / 就 / 迷路了。/ 走着走着

44. True or false? V 着 V 着就 … describes two planned actions done together. If false, correct it.

45. Your dad was watching a film after dinner. When you came back, he was snoring. Use V 着 V 着就 … 了. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 10. Separable verbs (离合词)

46. Complete: “We have met before.” 我们见 …… 面。

47. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我想见面你。
- B. 我想跟你见面。
- C. 我想见你面。
- D. 我想见面跟你。

48. Build: “Could you do me a favour?”

Put in order: 你能 / 一个 / 帮我 / 忙吗?

49. True or false? 他结过两次婚 puts the amount inside 结婚. If false, correct it.

50. You tell a friend you went swimming twice this week and had a haircut too. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

51. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我昨天见面了他。
- B. 我昨天跟他见面了。
- C. 我昨天见他面了吗。

52. Give advice with 多 or 少: drink more water / eat less sugar.

53. Say “This film is worth watching.”

54. Say “We talked until twelve o’clock.”

55. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 我昨天见面了我的老师. Correct it.

56. Use it yourself. Say that this activity is worth trying, and that while you were writing, the computer suddenly switched off.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 少 + Verb (do less)

1. 少

少 + verb = do less.

2. C. I ate too little.

Verb + 少了 = did too little; advice is 少 + verb.

3. 少放一点儿盐。

少 + verb + amount + object.

4. False.

少吃 = eat less; 不吃 = not at all.

5. Model answer: 你应该少吃甜的，多运动。

Check your answer:

- "Eat less" is 少吃, not 吃少: 吃少了 means "ate too little".
- An amount comes after the verb: 少吃一点儿, 少喝两杯.

■ 2. 多 + Verb (do more)

6. 多

多 + verb = do more.

7. D. 多住几天。

多 goes before the verb, then the amount: 多住几天 "stay a few more days". Putting 多 after the verb (住多几天) is a common error from English word order.

8. 多穿一件衣服。

多 + verb + amount + noun.

9. True.

很多 + noun = many / a lot of.

10. Model answer: 大家要多喝水，多休息。

Check your answer:

- "Practise more" is 多练习, not 练习多: 练习多了 suggests "practised a lot".
- The extra amount goes after the verb: 多住几天 – "stay a few more days".

■ 3. 值得 + Verb (worth doing)

11. 值得

A + 值得 + verb.

12. C. 这个地方值得去。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

这个地方值得去 is right: the thing comes first, then 值得 + verb. The negative is 不值得, not 没值得, and the verb cannot come before 值得.

13. 生气，不值得。

Action, then 不值得.

14. True.

值 + amount = worth in money.

15. Model answer: 故宫很值得去。

Check your answer:

- Put what is worth it first: 这本书值得看, not 值得这本书看.
- The negative is 不值得, not 没值得.

■ 4. 害得 (cause sb to suffer)

16. 害得

害得 + person + bad result.

17. A. 堵车害得我们迟到了。

害得 is for unwelcome results.

18. 你不回消息，害得我很担心。

Cause, 害得 + person + result.

19. True.

让 is neutral; 害得 blames the cause.

20. Model answer: 你害得我迟到了!

Check your answer:

- Do not use 害得 for good outcomes; for neutral or good causes use 让 / 使: 他的话让我很高兴 – "What he said made me very happy."
- Keep the person after 害得: 害得我迟到, not 害得迟到我.

■ 5. 由 + Person + Verb (done by)

21. 由

Task + 由 + person + verb.

22. A. 他被老师批评了。

Something done to someone (often unwelcome) takes 被.

23. 这个队由十个人组成。

由 … 组成 = be made up of.

24. True.

In writing, 由 can mean "from".

25. Model answer: 这次活动由小王负责。

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 由 names who is responsible; 被 reports something done to the subject, often unwelcome: 他被批评了 – "He was criticized."
- 由 sentences usually need no 了 or result complement: 由他负责.

■ 6. 并 / 并且 (combining verbs: and)

26. 并

并 joins two actions by the same subject.

27. D. 我买了苹果和香蕉。

我买了苹果和香蕉 is right: 和 joins nouns. 并 joins verbs or clauses ("and also"), so it cannot join 苹果 and 香蕉.

28. 会议讨论并通过了计划。

VP1 + 并 + VP2.

29. False.

False. Before a negative, 并 strengthens it and corrects an assumption: 他并不知道 "He actually doesn't know (as you might think)." It does not mean "and" here.

30. Model answer: 会议讨论并通过了新的计划。

Check your answer:

- 并 / 并且 join verb phrases; to join nouns use 和: 老师和学生, not 老师并学生.
- Usually one subject does both actions: 他学习好，并且很热情.

■ 7. 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

31. 过

从来没 + verb + 过.

32. B. 我还没去过西安。

Not yet (but planned) = 还没.

33. 我从来没去过新疆。

从来没 + verb + 过 + place.

34. False.

Experience takes 从来没 … 过; habit takes 从来不.

35. Model answer: 我从来没去过新疆。

Check your answer:

- Experience: 从来没 + V + 过; habit: 从来不 + V. Do not mix: 从来不去过 is wrong.
- Use 过 for the experiential model here. Other predicates can form complete 从来没 statements without 过; there is no universal requirement.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 8. Verb + 到 + Time / Event (until)

36. 到

Verb + 到 + end point.

37. C. 他看书看到半夜。

With an object, repeat the verb: 看书看到半夜.

38. 他一直工作到退休。

一直 + verb + 到 + event.

39. False.

That means "go to bed at ten"; "sleep until ten" is 睡到十点.

40. Model answer: 她昨天工作到凌晨三点。

Check your answer:

- Say 睡到十点, not 到十点睡 (that means "go to bed at ten").
- With an object, repeat the verb or put the object first: 看书看到很晚 ("I read until late") / 书看到很晚.

■ 9. V 着 V 着就 ... 了 (while ...-ing, suddenly)

41. 就

V 着 V 着就 + new event + 了.

42. A. 他走着走着就到了。

Verb + 着 + verb + 着 + 就 shows that while doing one thing, something else happened: 他走着走着就到了 "He kept walking and before he knew it he had arrived."

43. 我们走着走着就迷路了。

Subject + V 着 V 着 + 就 + result + 了.

44. False.

That is 一边 … 一边 …; V 着 V 着就 has an unplanned new event.

45. Model answer: 他看着看着就睡着了。

Check your answer:

- Use a one-syllable verb, repeated with 着 each time: 看着看着, not 看看着着.
- It usually tells what happened (a story), so the second part often ends with 了.

■ 10. Separable verbs (离合词)

46. 过

过 goes inside the verb-object word: 见过面.

47. B. 我想跟你见面。

见面 cannot take another object; use 跟 + person.

48. 你能帮我一个忙吗?

帮 + person + 一个 + 忙.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

49. True.

Separable verbs take 过 and amounts in the middle.

50. Model answer: 我理了一次发，游了两次泳。

Check your answer:

- Do not add an object after them: 跟他见面, not 见面他; 给我帮忙, not 帮忙我.
- Put duration and 了 inside: 睡了八个小时觉 or 睡觉睡了八个小时, not 睡觉了八个小时.

■ Mixed practice

51. B. 见面 is a separable verb and cannot take an object; say 跟 + person + 见面.

52. 多喝水，少吃糖。多/少 goes before the verb.

53. 这部电影值得一看 (or 值得看)。

54. 我们聊到了十二点。Verb + 到 + time gives the end point.

55. 见面 is a separable verb and cannot take an object. Say 我昨天跟老师见面了, or 我昨天见了老师.

56. Model answer. 这个活动值得试一试。我写着写着，电脑突然关机了。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 见面 and 睡觉 with a time or a number inside them: 见过一次面, 睡了八个小时觉.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

”But” statements

HSK 4

Three ways to say “but”. 尽管 …… 但是 …… admits a fact before contrasting it; 却 comes after the subject and shows that the result is not what you expected; 倒 shows a surprising or opposite point, often in speech. 却 and 倒 are adverbs, so they follow the subject.

At a glance

- **1.** 尽管 … ，但是 … – although: 尽管下着雪，运动会还是照常举行了。
- **2.** 却 + Predicate – however / yet: 我很累，却睡不着。
- **3.** 倒 – actually / on the contrary: 这家小饭馆倒挺贵的。

1. 尽管 … ，但是 … (although)

Form: 尽管 A，(但是 / 可是) subject + 还是 / 也 / 却 + B · 尽管 + verb (feel free to)

- **尽管下着雪，运动会还是照常举行了。** *Jǐnguǎn xiàzhe xuě, yùndònghuì háishi zhàocháng jǔxíng le.* – Although it was snowing, the sports day still went ahead.
- **尽管很晚了，他还在工作。** – Although it was late, he was still working.
- **尽管他很努力，可是成绩还是不太好。** – Although he works hard, his grades still aren’t very good.
- **有问题尽管问我。** – Feel free to ask me if you have any questions.

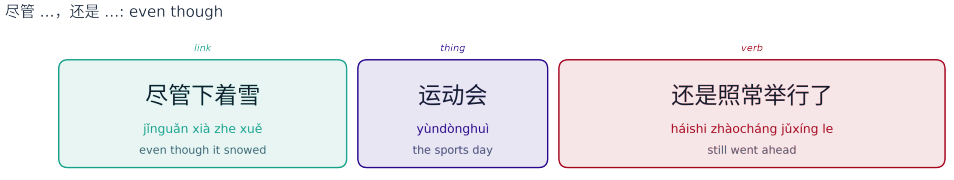
How it works. 尽管 *jǐnguǎn* states a real fact that does not stop the result. The second clause often has 但是, 可是, 还是, 也 or 却. It is a bit stronger and more formal than 虽然.

尽管 / 虽然	即使
although (it is true)	even if (it may happen)

Before a verb, 尽管 means “feel free to”.

Watch out

- One “although” is enough: don’t combine 尽管 with 虽然 or 即使 in the same clause.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 却 + Predicate (however / yet)

Form: clause, (但是) subject + 却 + predicate

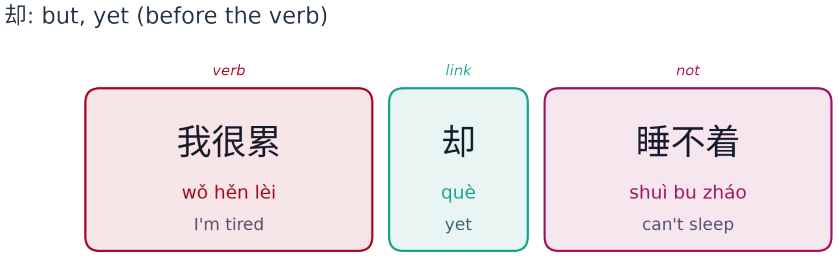
- **我很累，却睡不着。** *Wǒ hěn lèi, què shuì bu zháo.* – I'm exhausted, yet I can't sleep.
- **已经是春天了，天气却还很冷。** – It's already spring, yet it's still very cold.
- **我想帮他，但是他却不需要。** – I wanted to help him, but he didn't need it.

How it works. 却 *què* marks a surprising contrast. It is an adverb: it goes after the subject of the second clause, before the verb. It can follow 但是 or 可是, and is common in writing and stories.

但是	却
opens the clause	after the subject, inside the clause
但是他不来	他却不来

Watch out

- 却 never opens a clause: *wrong:* 却他不来 → 他却不来.



3. 倒 (actually / on the contrary)

Form: subject + 倒 + predicate · …… 倒是 ……，就是 ……

- **这家小饭馆倒挺贵的。** *Zhè jiā xiǎo fànguǎn dào tǐng guì de.* – This little restaurant is actually quite expensive.
- **大家都很紧张，他倒很平静。** – Everyone was nervous; he, surprisingly, was calm.
- **东西倒是不错，就是太贵了。** – The goods are fine; it's just that they're too expensive.
- **你说得倒容易！** – That's easy for you to say!

How it works. 倒 *dào* marks a result opposite to what you'd expect. It needs an expectation to go against, and sits after the subject, before the verb or adjective. 倒是 concedes a point before a "but" (就是). 你说得倒容易 is ironic: easy to say, hard to do.

却	倒	反而
plain “yet”	contrary to expectation, mild	on the contrary, stronger
他很累，却睡不着	他倒不着急	吃了药，病反而更重了

Watch out

- *wrong:* 倒他不着急 → 他倒不着急.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 尽管 … ，但是 … (although)

1. Complete: “Although it was late, he was still working.” …… 很晚了，他还在工作。

2. In 有问题尽管问我, what does 尽管 mean?

- A. because
- B. although
- C. even if
- D. feel free to

3. Build: “Although he works hard, his grades still aren’t good.”

Put in order: 成绩还是 / 不太好。/ 尽管他很努力 / ，可是

4. True or false? 尽管 introduces something that is actually true. If false, correct it.

5. The school sports day went ahead even though it was snowing. Use 尽管 … ，但是 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 却 + Predicate (however / yet)

6. Complete: “It’s spring, yet it’s still very cold.” 已经是春天了，天气 …… 还很冷。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他很聪明，他却不努力。
- B. 却他很聪明，不努力。
- C. 他很聪明，不努力却。
- D. 他很聪明，却他不努力。

8. Build: "I wanted to help him, but he didn't need it."

Put in order: ，但是 / 他却 / 我想帮他 / 不需要。

9. True or false? 却 can come before the subject, like 但是 (却他不来). If false, correct it.

10. After a long day you lie in bed, exhausted, but your mind won't stop. Use 却 + Predicate. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 倒 (actually / on the contrary)

11. Complete: "Everyone was nervous; he, surprisingly, was calm." 大家都很紧张，他 …… 很平静。

12. What does 你说得倒容易 suggest?

- A. You said it again.
- B. You spoke slowly.
- C. It's easy for you to say (but hard to do).
- D. The speaker agrees it is easy.

13. Build: "The goods are fine, it's just that they're too expensive."

Put in order: ， / 就是 / 太贵了。/ 东西倒是不错

14. True or false? 反而 is stronger than 却. If false, correct it.

15. Your friend expected the small restaurant to be cheap, but it was pricey and the fancy one was cheap. Use 倒. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 却他没有来。
- B. 他却没有来。
- C. 他没有来却。

17. Join with 尽管 …… 但是 ……: the method takes time / it works well.

18. Everyone thought the test would be hard. Say it was actually easy, with 倒.

19. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 却他没有来 for "However, he didn't come." Correct the word order.

20. Use it yourself. Admit that the method takes time, then say it works well.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 尽管 … ，但是 … (although)

1. 尽管

尽管 + fact, then the result despite it.

2. D. feel free to

In an invitation, 尽管 + verb = feel free to.

3. 尽管他很努力，可是成绩还是不太好。

尽管 A，可是 … 还是 B.

4. True.

For a hypothetical "even if", use 即使.

5. Model answer: 尽管下着雪，运动会还是照常举行了。

Check your answer:

- 尽管 + a fact, with 但是 / 还是 after it = "although". In a request or invitation, 尽管 + verb = "feel free to": 有问题尽管问 – "If you have questions, feel free to ask."
- Do not combine 尽管 with 即使 or 虽然 in the same clause; one is enough.

■ 2. 却 + Predicate (however / yet)

6. 却

却 after the subject marks the contrast.

7. A. 他很聪明，他却不努力。

他很聪明，他却不努力 is right: 却 is an adverb, so it goes after the subject of its clause. Unlike 但是, it can never start the clause.

8. 我想帮他，但是他却不需要。

但是 + subject + 却 + predicate.

9. False.

却 is an adverb after the subject.

10. Model answer: 我很累，却睡不着。

Check your answer:

- 却 is an adverb: it goes after the subject, never before it: 他却不来, not 却他不来.
- 但是 starts the clause; 却 follows the subject. They can be used together.

■ 3. 倒 (actually / on the contrary)

11. 倒

倒 marks a result against expectation.

12. C. It's easy for you to say (but hard to do).

Ironic 倒: easy to say, not to do.

13. 东西倒是不错，就是太贵了。

倒是 …，就是 ….

14. True.

反而 says the opposite of what you'd expect actually happened.

15. Model answer: 这家小饭馆倒挺贵的。

Check your answer:

- 倒 needs an expectation to go against (stated or obvious); without one it sounds odd.
- It goes after the subject: 他倒不着急, not 倒他不着急.

■ Mixed practice

16. B. 却 is an adverb, so it goes after the subject and before the verb.

17. 尽管这个办法很费时间，但是效果很好。

18. 这次考试倒不难。倒 marks a result that goes against what people expected.

19. 却 is an adverb, so it follows the subject: 他却没有来. A clause before it gives the contrast: 我等了他一个小时，他却没有来.

20. Model answer. 尽管这个办法很费时间，但是效果很好。

Review later. Tomorrow, write one sentence with 尽管 …… 但是 …… and one with 却.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

”Even if” statements

HSK 4

即使 …… 也 …… means “even if”. The first half is a situation that may not happen; the second half says the result will not change: 即使明天下雨，我们也要去. Use 虽然 for facts that are true, and 即使 mostly for things that are only possible.

即使 ... ，也 ... (even if)

Form: 即使 + possible situation，subject + 也 + result

- **即使明天下雨，我们也要训练。** *Jíshǐ míngtiān xià yǔ, wǒmen yě yào xùnliàn.* – Even if it rains tomorrow, we’ll still train.
- **即使很贵，我也要买。** *Jíshǐ hěn guì, wǒ yě yào mǎi.* – Even if it’s expensive, I’ll buy it.
- **即使大家都反对，我也要试试。** *Jíshǐ dàjiā dōu fǎnduì, wǒ yě yào shìshi.* – Even if everyone is against it, I’m going to give it a try.
- **即使你不说，我也知道。** *Jíshǐ nǐ bù shuō, wǒ yě zhīdào.* – Even if you don’t say it, I know.
- **即使工作再忙，他也每天给妈妈打电话。** *Jíshǐ gōngzuò zài máng, tā yě měitiān gěi māma dǎ diànhuà.* – However busy work is, he calls his mum every day.
- **即使只有一个人来，我们也会准时开始。** *Jíshǐ zhǐ yǒu yí ge rén lái, wǒmen yě huì zhǔnshí kāishǐ.* – Even if only one person comes, we’ll start on time.

How it works. 即使 *jíshǐ* “even if” introduces a situation that *may* happen, often an extreme or unwelcome one, and the second clause says the result does not change. 也 is needed in the second clause, placed after its subject and before the verb.

即使 often meets 再 + adjective (“however …”): 即使再累, 即使再难. The second clause often carries 要, 会 or 还是 to show determination. It is neutral in register; in casual speech 就算 does the same job.

虽然 / 尽管	即使 / 就算
a fact that is true: it did rain	a possibility: it might rain
虽然昨天下雨了，我们还是出去了。	即使明天下雨，我们也去。
pairs with 但是 / 还是	pairs with 也

Watch out

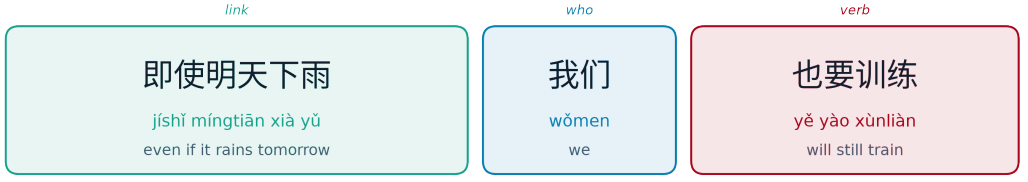
- 即使 pairs with 也, not 但是: *wrong:* 即使下雨，但是我们去 → 即使下雨，我们也去.
- 也 goes after the subject: *wrong:* 也我要去 → 我也要去.
- For something already true, use 虽然: *wrong:* 即使他昨天生病了，他也来上课了 → 虽然他昨天生病了，但是他还是来上课了.

In a passage

李明是学校足球队的队长。教练说，比赛的时候即使落后两个球，大家也不能放弃。上周的比赛下了大雨，即使球场上都是水，队员们也坚持跑完了全场。最后他们赢了一比零。

Read and notice. Find the two 即使 sentences. In each one, what is the difficult situation, and what stays the same?

即使 ...，也 ...: even if



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “Even if it’s expensive, I’ll buy it.” 即使很贵，我 …… 要买。

2. It rained yesterday, and you went out anyway. Which fits? _____ 昨天下雨了，我们还是出去了。

- A. 如果
- B. 虽然
- C. 即使
- D. 只要

3. Build: “Even if everyone is against it, I’m going to try.”

Put in order: 即使大家都反对 / 我也 / ， / 要试试。

4. True or false? 即使下雨，但是我们去 is correct. If false, correct it.

5. Your football coach is determined that tomorrow’s training will happen. Use 即使 … ，也 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Choose 虽然 or 即使: …… 今天下雨了，我们还是去了。/ …… 明天下雨，我们也要去。

7. Choose 即使 or 不管: …… 下雨，比赛也照常进行。/ …… 下不下雨，比赛都照常进行。

8. Finish the sentence with 也: 即使你不同意，……

9. Find and fix the problem. Rain tomorrow is possible but not certain. A classmate writes 虽然明天下雨，我们也要出发. Correct it.

10. Use it yourself. Say that even if the task is hard, you will finish it.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 也

即使 pairs with 也.

2. B. 虽然

A fact takes 虽然; 即使 is for possibilities.

3. 即使大家都反对，我也要试试。

即使 A，subject + 也 + B.

4. False.

即使 pairs with 也: 即使下雨，我们也去.

5. Model answer: 即使明天下雨，我们也要训练。

Check your answer:

- Put 也 after the subject of the second clause: 我也要去, not 也我要去.
- 即使 pairs with 也, not 但是: 即使下雨，也去, not 即使下雨，但是去.

■ Mixed practice

6. 虽然今天下雨了 (it really rained)，即使明天下雨 (it might rain). 虽然 pairs with 但是/还是; 即使 pairs with 也.

7. 即使下雨 (one hard case) + 也；不管下不下雨 (every case, so a choice: 下不下) + 都.

8. 即使你不同意，我也要试一试。The result after 也 does not change.

9. 虽然 is for facts. For something that may happen, use 即使 …… 也 ……: 即使明天下雨，我们也要出发.

10. Model answer. 即使任务很难，我也会把它完成。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 即使 sentence about the weather and one about an exam.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

"If" statements

HSK 4

要是 …… 就 …… is the spoken "if". It works like 如果 …… 就 ……, but sounds more relaxed: 要是你有时间，我们就一起去. 就 comes after the subject of the second half.

要是 ... ，就 ... (if – spoken)

Form: 要是 + condition + (的话)，subject + 就 + result

- **要是你早告诉我，我就去了。** *Yàoshi nǐ zǎo gàosu wǒ, wǒ jiù qù le.* – If you'd told me earlier, I would have gone.
- **要是明天不下雨，我们就去爬山。** *Yàoshi míngtiān bú xià yǔ, wǒmen jiù qù pá shān.* – If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we'll go hiking.
- **要是我早点儿出门，就不会迟到了。** *Yàoshi wǒ zǎo diǎnr chūmén, jiù bú huì chídào le.* – If I'd left earlier, I wouldn't have been late.
- **要是你累了，就休息一下。** *Yàoshi nǐ lèi le, jiù xiūxi yíxià.* – If you're tired, have a rest.
- **要是有问题的话，随时给我打电话。** *Yàoshi yǒu wèntí dehuà, suíshí gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.* – If there's any problem, call me any time.
- **要是我是你，我就不买这么贵的。** *Yàoshi wǒ shì nǐ, wǒ jiù bù mǎi zhème guì de.* – If I were you, I wouldn't buy such an expensive one.

How it works. 要是 *yàoshi* is the everyday spoken "if". The condition comes first; 的话 can close it (要是 …… 的话). The result clause takes 就, placed after its subject; when the subject is the same, it can drop: 要是累了，就休息.

要是 covers three kinds of "if": a real possibility (要是明天不下雨), advice (要是你累了，就 ……), and an unreal past or present (要是你早告诉我，我就去了; 要是我是你 ……). Chinese verbs do not change form for these, so the context, 了 and 就不会 …… 了 tell you that something did not happen.

要是…… 就 ……	如果…… 就 ……	只要…… 就 ……
spoken "if"	neutral, fits writing	"as long as": this one condition is enough
要是下雨， 我们就不去。	如果有问题， 请联系我。	只要有空，我就来。

Watch out

- 就 goes after the subject: *wrong:* 要是下雨，就我们不去 → 要是下雨，我们就不去.
- Do not add 但是 or 所以 to the result: *wrong:* 要是你来，所以我很高兴 → 要是你来，我就很高兴.
- In a formal letter or essay, prefer 如果.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

In a passage

周末我想和朋友去海边。要是天气好的话，我们就早上七点出发，在海边玩一整天。要是下雨，我们就去博物馆。上次我们没看天气预报，结果在路上淋湿了。要是那天早点儿查一下，就不会那么狼狈了。

Read and notice. Which 要是 sentence talks about something that did *not* happen? Which words tell you?

要是 …，就 …: if (spoken)



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete (spoken): “If you’re tired, have a rest.” …… 你累了，就休息一下。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 要是下雨，就我们不去。
- B. 我们就要是下雨不去。
- C. 要是下雨，我们就不去。
- D. 要是下雨，我们不就去。

3. Build: “If I’d left earlier, I wouldn’t have been late.”

Put in order: ， / 迟到了。 / 就不会 / 要是我早点儿出门

4. True or false? 如果 suits formal writing better than 要是. If false, correct it.

5. Your friend didn’t tell you about the party, and you would have loved to go. Use 要是 … ， 就 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 要是你累了，就休息一下吧。
- B. 要是你累了，休息一下就吧。
- C. 你累了要是，就休息一下吧。

7. Choose 要是 or 即使: …… 明天不下雨，我们就去爬山。/ …… 明天下雨，我们也去爬山。

8. Say casually: “If you’re free tonight, let’s watch a film.”

9. Find and fix the problem. A friend says 要是你有时间，我们所以一起去. Correct the second half.

10. Use it yourself. Invite a friend for tea if they finish early.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 要是

要是 + condition, 就 + result.

2. C. 要是下雨，我们就不去。

要是下雨，我们就不去 is right: in the result clause, 就 comes after the subject 我们 and before the verb phrase.

3. 要是我早点儿出门，就不会迟到了。

要是 + condition, 就不会 … 了.

4. True.

要是 is spoken; 如果 is neutral and written.

5. Model answer: 要是你早告诉我，我就去了。

Check your answer:

- Subject first, then 就: 我就去, not 就我去.
- 要是 is spoken; in an essay, 如果 or 假如 sounds better.

■ Mixed practice

6. A. 要是 starts the condition; 就 goes before the verb of the second half.

7. 要是 …… 就 = if (the plan depends on it); 即使 …… 也 = even if (the plan stays the same).

8. 要是你今天晚上有空，我们就去看电影吧。

9. 要是 pairs with 就, not 所以: 要是你有时间，我们就一起去. 所以 is for real reasons, not conditions.

10. Model answer. 要是你早点儿做完，我们就一起去喝茶。

Review later. Tomorrow, make two 要是 …… 就 …… offers to a classmate.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

”No matter” statements

HSK 4

不管 and 无论 mean “no matter …”: the result stays the same in every case. The first half must give a real choice, with a question word (谁, 什么, 怎么) or two options (下不下雨, 还是), and the second half takes 都 or 也. 无论 is more formal than 不管.

At a glance

- **1.** 不管 … ， 都 / 也 … – no matter: 不管天气怎么样，爷爷都去公园散步。
- **2.** 无论 / 不论 … ， 都 / 也 … – regardless: 无论是谁，都必须遵守规定。

1. 不管 … ，都 / 也 … (no matter)

Form: 不管 + open choice， subject + 都 / 也 + result

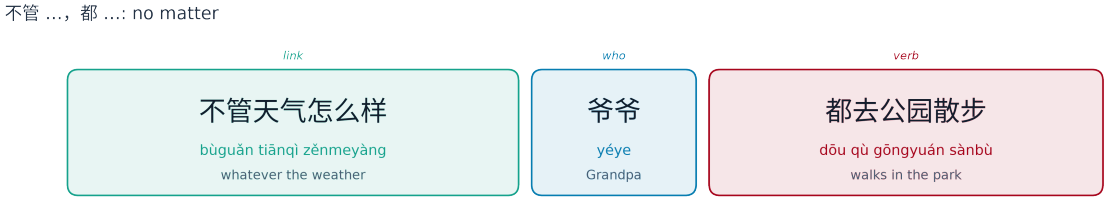
- **不管天气怎么样，爷爷都去公园散步。** *Bùguǎn tiānqì zěnmeyàng, yéye dōu qù gōngyuán sànbù.* – Whatever the weather, Grandpa goes for a walk in the park.
- **不管谁来，我都欢迎。** – Whoever comes, they’re welcome.
- **不管你去不去，我都去。** – Whether you go or not, I’m going.
- **不管多忙，他都给妈妈打电话。** – However busy he is, he calls his mum.

How it works. 不管 *bùguǎn* “no matter” must be followed by an **open choice**, and the result stays the same in every case. 都 or 也 goes after the subject of the result.

Open choice	Example
a question word	不管谁, 不管怎么样, 不管多忙
A-not-A	不管下不下雨
A 还是 B	不管坐车还是走路，都要一个小时

Watch out

- Not a plain fact: *wrong:* 不管下雨 → 不管下不下雨 or 不管天气怎么样.
- 虽然 + one fact: 虽然下雨，我还是去了. 不管 covers every possibility.



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 … (regardless)

Form: 无论 / 不论 + open choice，subject + 都 / 也 + result (formal)

- **无论是谁，都必须遵守规定。** *Wúlùn shì shéi, dōu bìxū zūnshǒu guīdìng.* – Whoever you are, you must follow the rules.
- **无论多晚，我们都会等你。** – However late it is, we'll wait for you.
- **无论遇到什么困难，他都不放弃。** – Whatever difficulties he meets, he never gives up.
- **无论如何，我都会来。** – Whatever happens, I'll come.

How it works. 无论 *wúlùn* and 不论 *búlùn* work exactly like 不管, but are more formal: they suit speeches, rules and writing. An open choice follows (a question word, A-not-A or 还是), then 都 / 也 after the subject. 不论大小 means "big or small". 无论如何 means "in any case, whatever happens".

不管	无论 / 不论
spoken, casual	formal

Watch out

- *wrong:* 无论下雨 → 无论天气怎么样.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 不管 … ，都 / 也 … (no matter)

1. Complete: "No matter how busy he is, he calls his mum." 不管多忙，他 …… 给妈妈打电话。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 不管下不下雨，我都去。
- B. 不管下不下雨，都我去。
- C. 不管下雨，我都去。

- D. 不管下雨，我还是去。

3. Build: “Whoever comes, they’re welcome.”

Put in order: ， / 不管谁来 / 欢迎。/ 我都

4. True or false? 不管 introduces one fact that really happened. If false, correct it.

5. Your grandfather walks in the park every morning, rain or shine. Use 不管 … ，都 / 也 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 … (regardless)

6. Complete (formal): “Whatever difficulties he meets, he never gives up.” …… 遇到什么困难，他都不放弃。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 无论多忙，都他来。
- B. 无论多忙，他但是来。
- C. 无论很忙，他都来。
- D. 无论多忙，他都来。

8. Build: “Whatever happens, I’ll come.”

Put in order: 无论如何 / 我都 / ， / 会来。

9. True or false? 不管 is more formal than 无论. If false, correct it.

10. The new school rules are read out at assembly. Use 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 不管下雨，我们都去。
- B. 不管下不下雨，我们都去。
- C. 不管下雨，我们也去了吗。

12. Say, formally, “Whoever you are, you must follow the rules.”

13. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 不管下雨，我们都去 for “Whether it rains or not, we’ll go.” Correct it.

14. Use it yourself. Say that whoever it is must follow the rules.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 不管 … ，都 / 也 … (no matter)

1. 都

不管 …，都/也 ….

2. A. 不管下不下雨，我都去。

不管 needs an open choice, and 都 follows the subject.

3. 不管谁来，我都欢迎。

不管 + QW, subject + 都 + result.

4. False.

It covers every possibility; a single fact takes 虽然.

5. Model answer: 不管天气怎么样，爷爷都去公园散步。

Check your answer:

- 不管下雨 is wrong; it needs an open choice: 不管下不下雨 or 不管天气怎么样 – "No matter what the weather is like."
- Put 都 / 也 after the subject of the result: 我都去, not 都我去.

■ 2. 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 … (regardless)

6. 无论

无论 + open choice, 都 + result.

7. D. 无论多忙，他都来。

无论多忙，他都来 is right: 无论 needs an open choice such as 多忙 or 什么, not a fixed 很忙, and the result clause uses subject + 都.

8. 无论如何，我都会来。

无论如何 + 都 + result.

9. False.

无论 / 不论 are the formal ones.

10. Model answer: 无论是谁，都必须遵守规定。

Check your answer:

- An open choice must follow: 无论天气怎么样, not 无论下雨.
- 都 / 也 goes after the subject of the result: 他都不放弃 – "He doesn't give up."

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

11. B. 不管 needs an open choice: 下不下雨, 谁, 什么 or A 还是 B.

12. 无论是谁，都要遵守规定。

13. 不管 needs an open choice: 不管下不下雨，我们都去 (or 不管下雨还是不下雨).

14. Model answer. 不管是谁，都要遵守规定。(More formal: 无论是谁，都要遵守规定。)

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 不管 sentence with a question word and one with A 还是 B.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Cause & effect statements

HSK 4

Three ways to give a cause or a result. 由于 gives a cause, often in writing; 因此 gives the result ("therefore"); 既然 …… 就 …… starts from a fact everyone accepts and draws a conclusion: 既然大家都到了，我们就开始吧.

At a glance

- **1.** 由于 – due to / owing to: 由于天气原因，航班推迟起飞。
- **2.** 因此 – therefore / for this reason: 新产品价格低，因此很受欢迎。
- **3.** 既然 … ，就 … – since / now that: 既然来了，就一起吃饭吧！

1. 由于 (due to / owing to)

Form: 由于 + cause，(所以 / 因此) + result (formal)

- **由于天气原因，航班推迟起飞。** *Yóuyú tiānqì yuányīn, hángbān tuīchí qǐfēi.* – Due to the weather, the flight's departure has been delayed.
- **由于天气不好，活动取消。** – Owing to bad weather, the event is cancelled.
- **由于准备充分，因此比赛很顺利。** – Because we prepared well, the competition went smoothly.

How it works. 由于 *yóuyú* is the formal "because, due to", common in notices, news and writing. It takes a noun phrase (由于时间关系) or a clause (由于他生病了), and normally starts the sentence. It can pair with 所以 or 因此.

因为	由于
everyday	formal
can follow the result: 我没去，因为下雨了	starts the sentence; pairs with 因此



2. 因此 (therefore / for this reason)

Form: cause, 因此 + result · subject + 因此 + verb

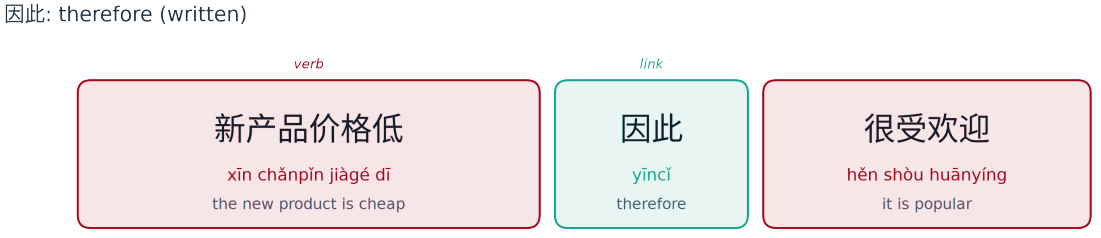
- **新产品价格低，因此很受欢迎。** *Xīn chǎnpǐn jiàgé dī, yīncǐ hěn shòu huānyíng.* – The new product is cheap, and therefore very popular.
- **他每天练习，因此进步很快。** – He practises every day and therefore improves fast.
- **这次考试很重要。因此，大家要认真复习。** – This exam is important. Therefore, everyone must revise carefully.

How it works. 因此 *yīncǐ* "therefore, for this reason" gives a logical consequence. It is formal. It starts the result clause, follows its subject (他因此决定 ……), or starts a new sentence with a comma.

所以	因此	于是
everyday "so"	formal "therefore"	the next action in a story

Watch out

- In careful writing, pair 由于 ……, 因此 …… or 因为 ……, 所以 ……; avoid 因为 ……, 因此 …….



3. 既然 … ，就 … (since / now that)

Form: 既然 + known fact, (subject +) 就 + suggestion / decision

- **既然来了，就一起吃饭吧！** *Jìrán lái le, jiù yìqǐ chī fàn ba!* – Since you're here, stay and eat with us!
- **既然你病了，就回家休息吧。** – Since you're ill, go home and rest.
- **既然你已经决定了，我就不多说了。** – Since you've already decided, I won't say any more.

How it works. 既然 *jìrán* "since, now that" starts from a fact both people already know. The second clause draws a conclusion: a suggestion (吧), a decision, or a question (为什么还 ……?). 就 goes after the subject.

如果	因为	既然
a possibility	explains why it happened	a known fact → what to do now
如果你来，……	因为下雨，比赛取消了	既然下雨了，我们就在家看电影吧

Watch out

- 既然 pairs with 就, not 所以: 既然下雨了，我们就别去了.

既然 …，就 …: since (we know)



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 由于 (due to / owing to)

1. Complete (notice): “Due to the bad weather, the event is cancelled.” …… 天气不好，活动取消。

2. Which word can naturally follow the result? 我没去，_____ 下雨了。

- A. 由于
- B. 于是
- C. 因此
- D. 因为

3. Build: “Because we prepared well, the competition went smoothly.”

Put in order: 因此 / 比赛很顺利。/ 由于准备充分 / ，

4. True or false? 由于 sounds more formal than 因为. If false, correct it.

5. An airport announcement explains why your flight is late. Use 由于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 因此 (therefore / for this reason)

6. Complete (written): “He practises daily and therefore improves fast.” 他每天练习，…… 进步很快。

7. Which pair suits careful writing?

- A. 由于 …，因此 …
- B. 如果 …，因此 …
- C. 既然 …，因此 …
- D. 因为 …，但是 …

8. Build: “Therefore, everyone must revise carefully.”

Put in order: 大家要 / 因此 / ， / 认真复习。

9. True or false? In casual conversation, 所以 sounds more natural than 因此. If false, correct it.

10. You are writing a report on why sales of a new drink went up. Use 因此. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 既然 … ，就 … (since / now that)

11. Complete: “Since you’re ill, go home and rest.” …… 你病了，就回家休息吧。

12. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 既然下雨了，所以我们别去了。
- B. 既然下雨了，我们就别去了。
- C. 我们就别去了，既然所以下雨。
- D. 既然明天可能下雨，就我们别去。

13. Build: “Since you’ve decided, I won’t say any more.”

Put in order: 我就 / ， / 既然你已经决定了 / 不多说了。

14. True or false? 既然 is the right word for a situation that may or may not happen. If false, correct it.

15. Your friend drops by just as you are cooking dinner. Use 既然 … ，就 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Choose 由于 or 既然: …… 天气不好，比赛推迟了。/ …… 你已经决定了，我就不说什么了。

17. Join with 因此: he practised every day / he won the competition.

18. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 既然他可能会来，我们就给他留个座位. Why does 既然 sound wrong?

19. Use it yourself. Since everyone is here, suggest starting.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 由于 (due to / owing to)

1. 由于

由于 + cause, then the result.

2. D. 因为

因为 can follow the result; 由于 normally starts the sentence.

3. 由于准备充分，因此比赛很顺利。

由于 …，因此 ….

4. True.

It suits notices, news and writing.

5. Model answer: 由于天气原因，航班推迟起飞。

Check your answer:

- 由于 introduces the cause before the result; "the result, 由于 cause" is less natural than with 因为.
- In everyday conversation, 因为 sounds more natural than 由于.

■ 2. 因此 (therefore / for this reason)

6. 因此

因此 gives the logical consequence.

7. A. 由于 …，因此 …

由于 … 因此 … is the standard written pair.

8. 因此，大家要认真复习。

因此 can open a new sentence.

9. True.

True. 因此 is formal and written; in casual conversation 所以 is the natural word for "so, therefore".

10. Model answer: 新产品价格低，因此很受欢迎。

Check your answer:

- In writing, 由于 …，因此 … is the standard pair; in speech, 因为 …，所以 ….
- 因此 is formal; in chat, 所以 is more natural.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 既然 … ，就 … (since / now that)

11. 既然

既然 + known fact, 就 + suggestion.

12. B. 既然下雨了，我们就别去了。

既然下雨了，我们就别去了 is right: 既然 pairs with 就 after the subject. 所以 does not pair with 既然, and 就 cannot come before 我们.

13. 既然你已经决定了，我就不多说了。

既然 + fact, subject + 就 + decision.

14. False.

Possibilities take 如果; 既然 needs a known fact.

15. Model answer: 既然来了，就一起吃饭吧！

Check your answer:

- 既然 needs a fact that is already true and known; for a possibility use 如果: 如果你来，… .
- Pair it with 就 (or 那 / 还), not 所以: 既然下雨了，我们就别去了 – "Since it's raining, let's not go."

■ Mixed practice

16. 由于天气不好，比赛推迟了 (cause)。既然你已经决定了，我就不说什么了 (an accepted fact leads to a decision).

17. 他每天练习，因此赢了比赛。因此 introduces the result.

18. 既然 starts from a fact everyone accepts. 可能 makes it uncertain. Use 如果: 如果他会来，我们就给他留个座位; or state a fact: 既然他说会来，……

19. Model answer. 既然大家都到了，我们就开始吧。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 既然 sentence and one 由于 sentence about school.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Complements

HSK 4

Complements are short words after a verb that finish its meaning. 来/去 show direction, 得/不 show whether you can do it (听得懂, 听不懂), and 起来 can mean "start to" (笑起来) or "in terms of doing it" (看起来, 说起来容易). Ask: does it show direction, ability or a start?

At a glance

- **1.** Direction complement 来 / 去 – HSK 4: 把东西拿进来吧。
- **2.** Potential complement 得 / 不 – HSK 4: 票都卖完了，我们买不到了。
- **3.** Verb / Adj + 起来 – start to …: 音乐一响，大家都跳起来了。
- **4.** Verb + 起来 – in terms of doing it: 这个手机用起来很方便。

1. Direction complement 来 / 去 (HSK 4)

Form: verb + 上 / 下 / 进 / 出 / 回 / 过 / 起 + 来 / 去

- **把东西拿进来吧。** *Bǎ dōngxi ná jìnlai ba.* – Bring the things in.
- **他走进教室来了。** *Tā zǒujìn jiàoshì lái le.* – He walked into the classroom.
- **他拿出一本书来。** – He took a book out.
- **我想起来了！** – I've remembered!

How it works. The direction word shows the path; 来 / 去 shows whether it moves towards the speaker (来) or away (去). If you are inside, a friend 进来; if you are outside, they 进去.

Places and things.

Item	Position	Example
a place	before 来 / 去	走进教室来
a thing	before 来 / 去, or after the whole complement	拿出一本书来 / 拿出来一本书

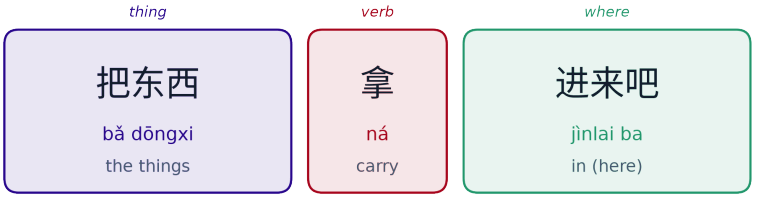
Abstract meanings. 想起来 = remember; 看出来 = notice, tell: 我看出来他不高兴.

Watch out

- A place never follows 来 / 去: *wrong:* 走进来教室 → 走进教室来.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Verb + 进来 / 出去: direction of the movement





2. Potential complement 得 / 不 (HSK 4)

Form: verb + 得 / 不 + result or direction · verb + 得了 / 不了 (liǎo)

- **票都卖完了，我们买不到了。** *Piào dōu màiwán le, wǒmen mǎi bu dào le.* – The tickets are sold out; we can't get any.
- **箱子太重了，我拿不动。** – The box is too heavy; I can't lift it.
- **现在出发还来得及。** – If we leave now, there's still time.
- **我明天有事，去不了。** – I've got something on tomorrow; I can't make it.

How it works. 得 or 不 between a verb and its complement says whether the result can be achieved in the situation.

Form	Meaning
买得到 / 买不到	can / can't get hold of
拿得动 / 拿不动	can / can't lift
来得及 / 来不及	there is / isn't time
受不了	can't stand it
听不清楚	can't hear clearly
记不住	can't remember
去得了 / 去不了	able / unable to go

The object goes after the complement, or first as the topic: 我听不懂他的话 / 他的话我听不懂.

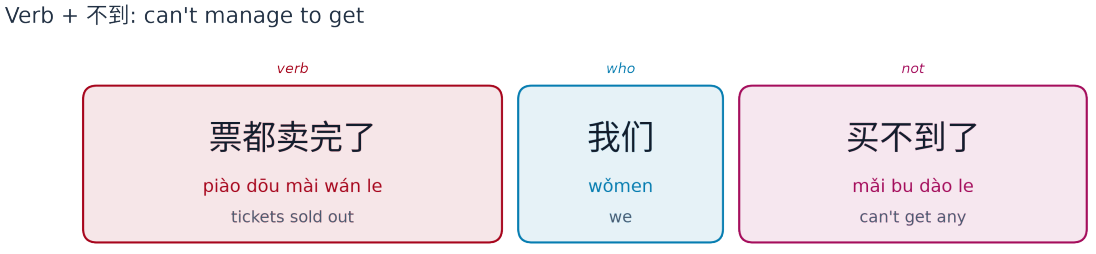
Build it from a result. Start from verb + result and put 得 (can) or 不 (can't) in the middle:

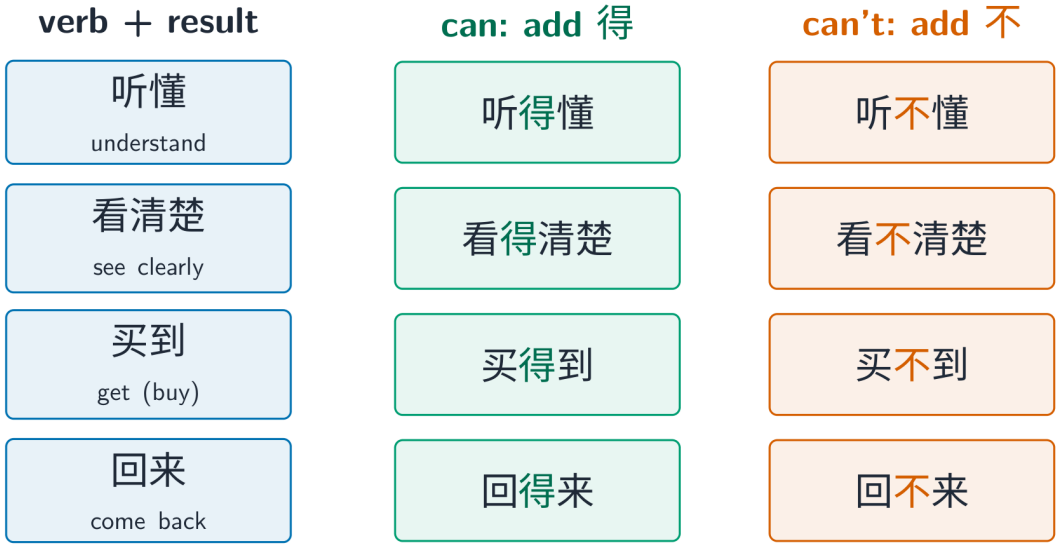
verb + result	can	can't
听懂 understand	听得懂	听不懂
看清楚 see clearly	看得清楚	看不清楚
买到 get (buy)	买得到	买不到
回来 come back	回得来	回不来

没听懂 vs 听不懂. 没听懂 = didn't understand (this time); 听不懂 = can't understand (beyond you). Answer a question with the complement itself: 你听得懂吗? – 听得懂。/ 听不懂。

Watch out

- Permission and rules take 不能, not a complement: 这里不能停车.





3. Verb / Adj + 起来 (start to ...)

Form: verb / adjective + 起来 · verb + 起 + object + 来

- **音乐一响，大家都跳起来了。** *Yīnyuè yì xiǎng, dàjiā dōu tiào qǐlai le.* – As soon as the music played, everyone started dancing.
- **宝宝突然哭起来了。** – The baby suddenly started crying.
- **下起雪来了。** *Xià qǐ xuě lái le.* – It started to snow.
- **天气热起来了。** – It's getting hot.

How it works. After a verb, 起来 means an action starts and goes on: 笑起来, 聊起来. After an adjective, it means a state begins to develop, usually towards "more": 热起来, 好起来, 胖起来. (Getting cooler is often 冷下来 / 凉下来.) An object goes **between** 起 and 来: 下起雨来, 唱起歌来.

起来	下去
start something new	continue something already going
他们聊起来了	请说下去

Watch out

- *wrong:* 下起来雨 → 下起雨来.

一 ...，(就) ...: as soon as



4. Verb + 起来 (in terms of doing it)

Form: thing + verb + 起来 + comment

- **这个手机用起来很方便。** *Zhège shǒujī yòng qǐlai hěn fāngbiàn.* – This phone is very convenient to use.
- **这个菜吃起来有点儿辣。** – This dish tastes a bit spicy.
- **这首歌听起来很熟悉。** – This song sounds familiar.
- **说起来容易，做起来难。** – Easier said than done.

How it works. Verb + 起来 + comment judges what it is like to do something. Put the thing you judge first.

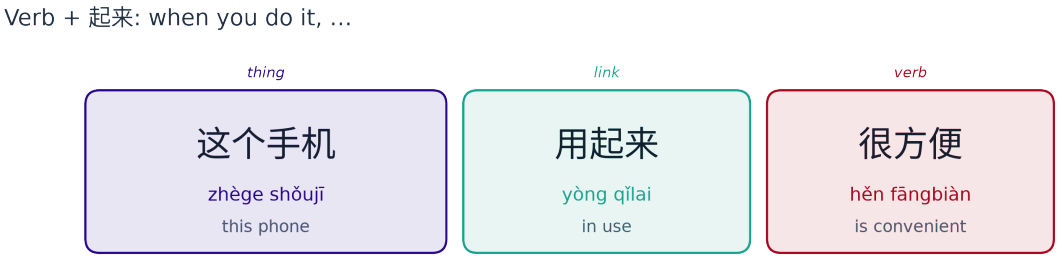
Three uses of 起来.

Use	Example
judging the experience	这个包背起来很舒服
starting an action	大家都笑起来了
upward movement	站起来

The comment after it tells you it is a judgement.

Watch out

- *wrong:* 读起来这本书很有意思 → 这本书读起来很有意思.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Direction complement 来 / 去 (HSK 4)

1. You are in the classroom. Your classmate is at the door. What do you say?

- A. 快进去吧!
- B. 快进来吧!

2. You are waiting outside the shop for your friend. You phone them – "Come out, I'm at the door!"

- A. 你出去吧，我在门口!
- B. 你出来吧，我在门口!

3. You are inside. Ask a friend: "Bring the chairs in." 把椅子搬进 …… 吧。

4. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他走进来教室了。
- B. 他进来走教室了。
- C. 他走教室进来了。
- D. 他走进教室来了。

5. Build: "He took a book out."

Put in order: 来。/ 一本书 / 拿出 / 他

6. True or false? 我看出来他不高兴 means "I could tell he was unhappy." If false, correct it.

7. You ask your brother to carry the shopping bags from the car into the kitchen. Use Direction complement 来 / 去. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. Potential complement 得 / 不 (HSK 4)

8. From 看清楚, build "can't see clearly": ……

9. From 回来, build "can come back": 他七点以前 …… 吗?

10. The film was in English and you understood almost nothing – your English is only basic. Which fits best?

- A. 这个电影我听得懂。
- B. 这个电影我没听。
- C. 这个电影我听不懂。

11. You missed one sentence because a bus went past. "Sorry, I didn't catch that – say it again?"

- A. 对不起，我没听清楚，你再说一遍?
- B. 对不起，我听不清楚，你再说一遍?

12. 你看得见黑板上的字吗? You can see them. What do you answer?

- A. 是。
- B. 看得见。

13. Complete: "The box is too heavy; I can't lift it." 箱子太重了，我拿 …… 动。

14. A sign forbids parking. Which fits? 这里 _____ 停车。

- A. 不能
- B. 不了
- C. 停不到
- D. 停不了

15. Match each form to its meaning.

- (1) 来不及
- (2) 受不了
- (3) 记不住
- (4) 买不到
- A. not enough time
- B. can't remember
- C. can't stand it
- D. can't get hold of

16. Build: "I've got something on tomorrow; I can't make it."

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Put in order: 不了。/ 我明天 / ，去 / 有事

17. You try to book concert tickets online, but they are gone in minutes. Use Potential complement 得 / 不. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. Verb / Adj + 起来 (start to ...)

18. Complete: “The baby suddenly started crying.” 宝宝突然哭 …… 了。

19. Which says “It started to snow”?

- A. 雪下起了来。
- B. 下起雪来了。
- C. 下起来雪了。
- D. 起来下雪了。

20. Build: “They started singing.”

Put in order: 唱起 / 来了。/ 他们 / 歌

21. True or false? 请说下去 asks someone to start speaking. If false, correct it.

22. At a party, the band plays a favourite song and the room comes alive. Use Verb / Adj + 起来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. Verb + 起来 (in terms of doing it)

23. Complete: “This method sounds simple but is hard to do.” 这个方法听 …… 简单，做起来难。

24. Match each sentence to the use of 起来.

- (1) 这个包背起来很舒服。
- (2) 大家都笑起来了。
- (3) 请站起来。
- A. judging the experience
- B. upward movement
- C. starting an action

25. Build: “This song sounds familiar.”

Put in order: 这首歌 / 很熟悉。/ 听起来

26. True or false? 说起来容易，做起来难 means “easier said than done”. If false, correct it.

27. A friend asks what you think of your new phone after a week. Use Verb + 起来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

28. Choose 起来 meaning: 她突然笑起来了。/ 这件事说起来容易，做起来难。

29. You cannot carry the box because it is too heavy. Use a potential complement.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

30. Your friend is downstairs; you are upstairs. Ask them to come up.

31. Choose 没听懂 or 听不懂: 他说上海话，我 ……。/ 刚才有车经过，我 ……，你再说一遍?

32. Find and fix the problem. A classmate reports one failed attempt yesterday with 我看不懂那封信. What is the difference from 我没看懂那封信?

33. Use it yourself. Say they started chatting, and that you can hear them but did not understand the joke.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Direction complement 来 / 去 (HSK 4)

1. B. 快进来吧!

You are inside, so moving towards you – 进来.

2. B. 你出来吧，我在门口!

You are outside; coming out moves towards you – 出来.

3. 来

Towards the speaker: 进来.

4. D. 他走进教室来了。

他走进教室来了 is right: with a place word, the place goes between 进 and 来 (走进 + 教室 + 来).

5. 他拿出一本书来。

Verb + 出 + object + 来.

6. True.

True. 看出来 means "can tell, make out" from what you see: 我看出来他不高兴 "I could tell he was unhappy."

7. Model answer: 把东西拿进来吧。

Check your answer:

- 走进教室来, not 走进来教室: a place never follows 来 / 去.
- Pick 来 or 去 by where the speaker is: inside the room → 进来; outside → 进去.

■ 2. Potential complement 得 / 不 (HSK 4)

8. 看不清楚

Put 不 between the verb and the result – 看不清楚.

9. 回得来

Put 得 in the middle – 回得来.

10. C. 这个电影我听不懂。

Can't understand (it's beyond your level) – 听不懂.

11. A. 对不起，我没听清楚，你再说一遍?

One time, a result that didn't happen – 没听清楚. 听不清楚 suggests you can't hear clearly in general (for example, the line is always bad).

12. B. 看得见。

Repeat the complement – 看得见. 是 alone does not answer this question.

13. 不

Verb + 不 + 动 = can't move it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

14. A. 不能

Prohibition is 不能 (a formal sign may also write 不得); potential complements are about whether a result is achievable, and 不了 cannot stand before a verb.

15. (1) A: 来不及 = not enough time; (2) C: 受不了 = can't stand it; (3) B: 记不住 = can't remember; (4) D: 买不到 = can't get hold of

Verb + 不 + complement = the result can't be achieved.

16. 我明天有事，去不了。

Verb + 不了 = unable to.

17. Model answer: 票都卖完了，我们买不到了。

Check your answer:

- 不能 is about permission or general ability: 这里不能停车 ("You can't park here"). Potential complements are about whether the result can be achieved: 我听不懂.
- Put the object after the complement or before as a topic: 我听不懂他的话 / 他的话我听不懂 – "I can't understand what he's saying."

■ 3. Verb / Adj + 起来 (start to ...)

18. 起来

Verb + 起来 = start to.

19. B. 下起雪来了。

The object goes between 起 and 来.

20. 他们唱起歌来了。

Verb + 起 + object + 来.

21. False.

下去 = continue; starting is 起来.

22. Model answer: 音乐一响，大家都跳起来了。

Check your answer:

- 下起雨来, not 下起来雨: the object sits between 起 and 来.
- Adj + 起来 usually describes a change towards more: 热起来, 好起来; "getting cold" is often 冷下来 / 凉下来.

■ 4. Verb + 起来 (in terms of doing it)

23. 起来

Verb + 起来 + comment.

24. (1) A: 这个包背起来很舒服。= judging the experience; (2) C: 大家都笑起来了。= starting an action; (3) B: 请站起来。= upward movement

The comment and the verb tell you which use it is.

25. 这首歌听起来很熟悉。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Thing + Verb + 起来 + comment.

26. True.

It judges saying versus doing.

27. Model answer: 这个手机用起来很方便。

Check your answer:

- Put what you are judging first: 这本书读起来很有意思, not 读起来这本书很有意思 in most speech.
- 起来 here does not mean "get up" or "start"; it marks the experience of doing.

■ Mixed practice

28. 笑起来 = started to laugh. 说起来 / 做起来 = when it comes to saying / doing it.

29. 箱子太重了，我拿不动。拿不动 means "cannot carry".

30. 你上来吧！来 shows movement towards the speaker.

31. 听不懂 (it is beyond me)；没听清楚 / 没听懂 (this one time). 没 + result = it didn't happen; 不 in the middle = can't.

32. 看不懂 says you are not able to understand it (in general). 没看懂 reports what happened that time: you read it and did not understand.

33. Model answer. 他们聊起来了。我听得见他们说话，可是没听懂那个笑话。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 起来, 得/不 and 来/去.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Conditional statements

HSK 4

Two conditions that work in opposite ways. 只要 …… 就 …… says one condition is enough: 只要努力，就能进步. 除非 …… 才 …… says only this condition will work: 除非你去，他才会去. Learn each with its partner word: 只要 with 就, 除非 with 才 (or 否则).

At a glance

- **1.** 只要 … ，就 … – as long as: 只要每天练习半个小时，你就一定能通过。
- **2.** 除非 … ，才 … – only if / unless: 除非你有员工卡，才能用这台打印机。

1. 只要 ... ，就 ... (as long as)

Form: 只要 + condition，(subject +) 就 + result

- **只要每天练习半个小时，你就一定能通过。** *Zhǐyào měi tiān liànxí bàn ge xiǎoshí, nǐ jiù yídìng néng tōngguò.* – As long as you practise half an hour every day, you'll definitely pass.
- **只要有网络，在哪儿都能工作。** – As long as there's internet, you can work anywhere.
- **只要你不说，就没人知道。** – As long as you don't tell, nobody will know.

How it works. 只要 *zhǐyào* says the condition is **enough** to bring about the result. 就 follows the subject of the result clause.

只要 A，就 B	只有 A，才 B
A is sufficient	A is necessary
只要有票，就能进去 (a ticket is all you need)	只有有票，才能进去 (no ticket, no entry)

Watch out

- 只要 pairs with 就, not 才: *wrong:* 只要努力才能成功 → 只要努力就能成功.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

只要 …，就 …: as long as



2. 除非 … ，才 … (only if / unless)

Form: 除非 A，才 B (only if) · 除非 A，否则 / 不然 B (unless)

- **除非你有员工卡，才能用这台打印机。** *Chúfēi nǐ yǒu yuángōng kǎ, cái néng yòng zhè tái dǎyìnjī.* – Only if you have a staff card can you use this printer.
- **除非你去，我才去。** – I'll go only if you go.
- **除非下大雨，否则比赛照常进行。** – Unless it rains heavily, the match goes ahead.
- **除非你快一点儿，否则就赶不上火车了。** – Unless you hurry, you'll miss the train.

How it works. 除非 *chúfēi* is about the one condition that matters. The second half decides the logic.

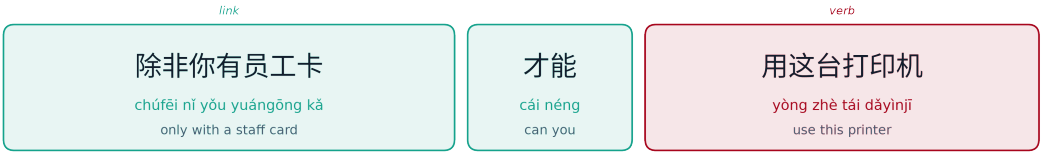
除非 A，才 B	除非 A，否则 B
B only if A (like 只有 …… 才)	if A doesn't happen, B will
除非他来，我才去	除非下大雨，否则照常进行

Without 才 or 否则, a 除非 sentence can be unclear, so always add one.

Watch out

- 除非 (only if, unless) is not 除了 (except, besides): 除了他，大家都来了.

除非 …，才 …: only if



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

1. Complete: “As long as you work hard, you can learn it well.” 只要努力，你 …… 能学好。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 只要有时间，我才去。
- B. 只要有时间，就我去。
- C. 只要有时间，我就去。
- D. 只有有时间，我就去。

3. Build: “As long as you don’t tell, nobody will know.”

Put in order: ， / 只要你不说 / 没人知道。/ 就

4. True or false? 只有 … 才 … makes the condition necessary; it does not automatically make that condition sufficient. If false, correct it.

5. A classmate worries about failing the speaking test. You think daily practice is enough. Use 只要 … ， 就 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 除非 … ，才 … (only if / unless)

6. Complete: “Unless you hurry, you’ll miss the train.” 除非你快一点儿，…… 就赶不上火车了。

7. What does 除非你去，我才去 mean?

- A. I won’t go if you go.
- B. I’ll go only if you go.
- C. I’ll go whether or not you go.
- D. Except for you, I’ll go.

8. Build: “Unless it rains heavily, the match goes ahead.”

Put in order: 照常进行。/ ， 否则 / 除非下大雨 / 比赛

9. True or false? 除非 and 除了 mean the same. If false, correct it.

10. The office printer only works for staff with a card. Use 除非 … , 才 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Choose 只要 or 除非: …… 有时间，我就去。/ …… 你请他，他才会来。

12. Find and fix the problem. 只有有票，才能进去. A classmate concludes that a ticket lets you in at any time. Is that what the sentence says?

13. Use it yourself. Say that unless it rains heavily, you will go.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

1. 就

只要 pairs with 就.

2. C. 只要有时间，我就去。

只要有时间，我就去 is right: 只要 ("as long as") pairs with 就 after the subject. 才 belongs with 只有, a stricter condition.

3. 只要你不说，就没人知道。

只要 + condition, 就 + result.

4. True.

A necessary condition can coexist with other requirements. 只要 instead presents a sufficient condition.

5. Model answer: 只要每天练习半个小时，你就一定能通过。

Check your answer:

- 只要 says the condition is sufficient; "only if" (a necessary condition) is 只有 … 才 ….
- Pair 只要 with 就, not 才: 只要努力就能成功, not 只要努力才能成功.

■ 2. 除非 … ，才 … (only if / unless)

6. 否则

除非 A，否则 B = unless A, B.

7. B. I'll go only if you go.

除非 A，才 B means "only if A, then B": 除非你去，我才去 "I'll go only if you go." It does not mean "except for".

8. 除非下大雨，否则比赛照常进行。

除非 A，否则 B.

9. False.

除了 = except; 除非 = only if / unless.

10. Model answer: 除非你有员工卡，才能用这台打印机。

Check your answer:

- With 才: 除非 A，才 B – B only if A. With 否则: 除非 A，否则 B – B unless A. Do not mix the logic.
- 除非下大雨，我们都去 (without 否则) is ambiguous; use 否则 or 不然 to make "unless" clear.

■ Mixed practice

11. 只要有时间，我就去 (time is enough)。除非你请他，他才会来 (only your invitation will work).

12. No. 只有 …… 才 says a ticket is needed; it does not say it is enough. 只要有票，就能进去 would say it is enough.

13. Model answer. 除非下大雨，否则我们一定去。(Or: 除非不下雨，我们才去.)

Review later. Tomorrow, explain the difference between 只要 …… 就 and 除非 …… 才 with your own examples.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Noun phrases

HSK 4

Noun phrases about how many. 所有 (的) + noun means “all”: 所有的学生. …… 之一 means “one of”: 长城是中国最有名的地方之一. 另外 + number + measure word + noun means “another” or “the other …”: 另外两个人.

At a glance

- **1.** 所有 (的) + Noun – all: 所有的学生都要参加明天的考试。
- **2.** … 之一 – one of: 长城是世界上最有名的建筑之一。
- **3.** 另外 + Number + MW + Noun – another: 我还有另外两个问题。

1. 所有 (的) + Noun (all)

Form: 所有 (的) + noun + 都 + verb · verb + 所有的 + noun

- **所有的学生都要参加明天的考试。** *Suǒyǒu de xuésheng dōu yào cānjiā míngtiān de kǎoshì.* – All students must take tomorrow’s exam.
- **所有人都同意了。** – Everyone agreed.
- **我看过所有的书。** – I’ve read all the books.
- **一切都会好的。** – Everything will be fine.

How it works. 所有 (的) *suǒyǒu (de)* + noun covers every member of a group; 的 is optional. As the subject, it needs 都 before the verb. As the object, 都 is not needed; with the books as the topic, 都 alone does the job: 这些书我都看过.

所有	一切	全部
all the … (before a noun)	everything, often abstract	the whole, all of it
所有的问题	一切都会好的	钱全部花完了

Watch out

- *wrong:* 所有的人来了 → 所有的人都来了.
- 所有 goes before a noun, not a verb: *wrong:* 我们所有去 → 我们都去.



2. ... 之一 (one of)

Form: (最 + adjective + 的) + group + 之一

- **长城是世界上最有名的建筑之一。** *Chángchéng shì shìjiè shang zuì yǒumíng de jiànzhù zhī yī.* – The Great Wall is one of the most famous structures in the world.
- **她是我最好的朋友之一。** – She is one of my best friends.
- **天气不好是比赛取消的原因之一。** – Bad weather was one of the reasons the match was cancelled.
- **熊猫是中国的象征之一。** – The panda is one of China's symbols.

How it works. 之一 *zhī yī* "one of" goes at the **end**, after the group. 其中之一 means "one of them": 这三本书，其中之一是我写的. The same 之 appears in fractions: 三分之一 (one third).

Watch out

- *wrong:* 之一最好的朋友 → 最好的朋友之一.
- No 一个: *wrong:* 一个原因之一 → 原因之一.



3. 另外 + Number + MW + Noun (another)

Form: 另外 + (number) + measure word + noun · 另外的 + noun

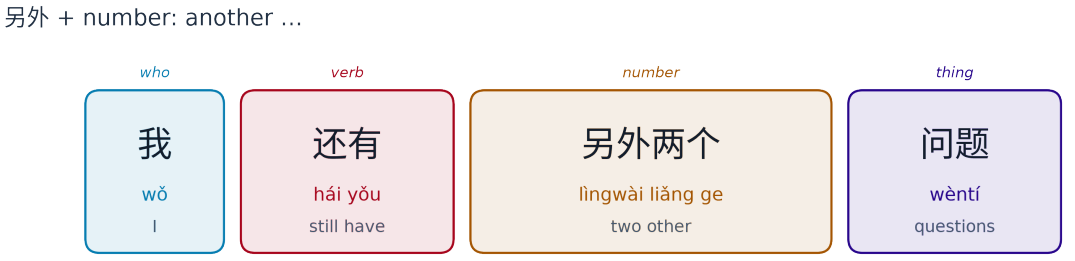
- **我还有另外两个问题。** *Wǒ hái yǒu lìngwài liǎng ge wèntí.* – I have another two questions.
- **这个是我的，另外一个是我弟弟的。** – This one is mine; the other one is my brother's.
- **三个人里，一个是老师，另外两个是学生。** – Of the three, one is a teacher and the other two are students.

How it works. Before a number and measure word, 另外 means "another, the other": it picks out the rest of a group after one has been mentioned. 另外的办法 means "another way". At the start of a sentence with a comma, 另外 means "in addition".

另外 + number	别的	其他
the other / another (counted)	any other	the others, the rest
另外两个学生	你还有别的问题吗?	其他人都走了

Watch out

- *wrong:* 两个另外 → 另外两个.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 所有 (的) + Noun (all)

1. Complete: "All the shops are closed." 所有的商店 …… 关门了。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我们所有来了。
- B. 所有的人都来了。
- C. 所有人的都来了。
- D. 人所有都来了。

3. Build: "I've read all the books."

Put in order: 我 / 书。/ 所有的 / 看过

4. True or false? 一切都会好的 means "Everything will be fine." If false, correct it.

5. Your teacher makes an announcement to the whole school. Use 所有. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. … 之一 (one of)

6. Complete: "She is one of my best friends." 她是我最好的朋友 ……。

7. Which phrase is correct?

- A. 一个中国最大的城市之一
- B. 中国最大的城市之一

- C. 中国之一最大的城市
- D. 之一中国最大的城市

8. Build: "The panda is one of China's symbols."

Put in order: 熊猫 / 之一。/ 是 / 中国的象征

9. True or false? 其中之一 means "one of them". If false, correct it.

10. You are introducing China's great sights to visiting friends. Use … 之一. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 另外 + Number + MW + Noun (another)

11. Complete: "This one is mine; the other one is my brother's." 这个是我的，…… 一个是我弟弟的。

12. Which phrase is correct?

- A. 另外两个学生
- B. 另外学生两个
- C. 两个另外学生
- D. 两个学生另外

13. Build: "One is a teacher; the other two are students."

Put in order: 另外两个 / 是学生。/ ， / 一个是老师

14. True or false? 你还有别的问题吗 asks about any other questions. If false, correct it.

15. You have answered the first question in an interview, and the interviewer has more. Use 另外 + Number + MW + Noun. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Translate: 王力是我们班最好的学生之一。

17. Choose 所有 or 另外: …… 的人都到了。/ 三个人去了，…… 两个人没去。

18. Find and fix the problem. 王力是最好的学生之一. A classmate translates it as "Wang Li is the only best student." Correct it.

19. Use it yourself. Say you already have two books and want to buy another three.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 所有 (的) + Noun (all)

1. 都

所有 + noun as subject takes 都.

2. B. 所有的人都来了。

所有的人都来了 is right: 所有的 + noun is a whole group, so the verb needs 都. 所有 cannot follow the noun, and 我们所有 is not used.

3. 我看过所有的书。

所有的 + noun as the object.

4. True.

一切 = everything (often abstract).

5. Model answer: 所有的学生都要参加明天的考试。

Check your answer:

- As a subject, 所有 + noun almost always takes 都: say 所有的人都来了.
- 所有 goes before a noun; it is not an adverb: 我们都去, not 我们所有去.

■ 2. ... 之一 (one of)

6. 之一

Group + 之一 = one of.

7. B. 中国最大的城市之一

The group comes first, 之一 last.

8. 熊猫是中国的象征之一。

X 是 + group + 之一.

9. True.

其中 refers back to the group.

10. Model answer: 长城是世界上最有名的建筑之一。

Check your answer:

- Say 最好的朋友之一, not 之一最好的朋友 (English word order).
- Do not add 一个: 原因之一, not 一个原因之一.

■ 3. 另外 + Number + MW + Noun (another)

11. 另外

另外 + number + MW = the other one.

12. A. 另外两个学生

另外 comes before the number.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

13. 一个是老师，另外两个是学生。

另外 picks out the remaining members.

14. True.

True. 别的 means "other, any other": 你还有别的问题吗? "Do you have any other questions?"

15. Model answer: 我还有另外两个问题。

Check your answer:

- Put 另外 before the number: 另外两个, not 两个另外.
- 另外 + noun phrase = the other / another; 另外，… at the start = in addition (a new point).

■ Mixed practice

16. Wang Li is one of the best students in our class. 之一 means he is one of several.

17. 所有的人都到了。三个人去了，另外两个人没去。

18. 之一 means "one of": Wang Li is one of the best students.

19. Model answer. 我已经有两本书了，还想买另外三本。

Review later. Tomorrow, name one of your favourite films with 之一.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Sentence patterns – quantity & scope

HSK 4

Three patterns about scope: who or what is included. 任何 + noun + 都/也 means "any" with no exceptions; 既 …… 也/又 …… joins two qualities; 为 …… 而 …… gives a purpose in a formal way. Each pattern needs its second word (都/也, 也/又, 而) to be complete.

At a glance

- **1.** 为 … 而 … – for the sake of: 他为了上大学而努力工作。
- **2.** 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 – any: 有任何问题，都可以问我。
- **3.** 既 … 也 / 又 … – both … and …: 这个包既好看又实用。

1. 为 ... 而 ... (for the sake of)

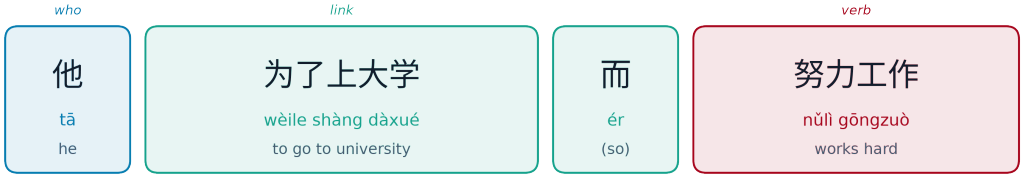
Form: 为 (了) + goal / cause + 而 + action / feeling (formal)

- **他为了上大学而努力工作。** *Tā wèile shàng dàxué ér nǔlì gōngzuò.* – He works hard in order to go to university.
- **为梦想而奋斗。** – Strive for your dreams.
- **大家都为他的成功而高兴。** – Everyone was happy about his success.
- **不要为小事而生气。** – Don't get angry over small things.

How it works. 为 …… 而 …… ties a purpose (or a cause of a feeling) tightly to an action in one phrase. Here 为 is read *wèi*, and 而 does not mean "but": it links the purpose to the verb. It suits speeches, slogans and writing.

为了 + goal，clause	为 …… 而 + verb
everyday	formal, one tight phrase
为了上大学，他努力工作	他为上大学而努力工作

为了 … 而 …: for the sake of



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

2. 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 (any)

Form: 任何 + noun + 都 / 也 · 不 / 没 + verb + 任何 + noun

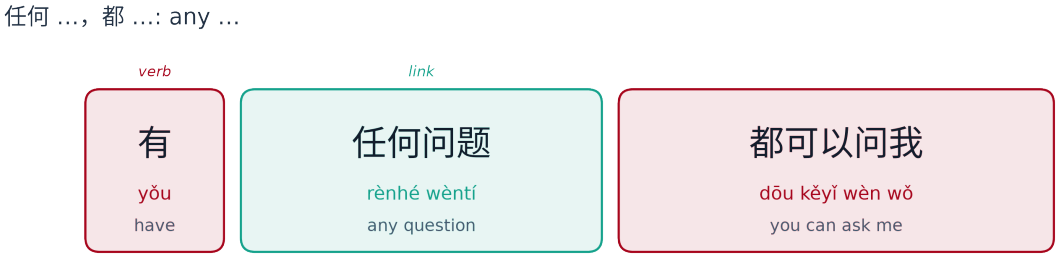
- **有任何问题，都可以问我。** *Yǒu rènhé wèntí, dōu kěyǐ wèn wǒ.* – If you have any questions at all, you can ask me.
- **任何人都可以参加。** – Anyone can take part.
- **我不会告诉任何人。** – I won't tell anyone.
- **任何时候你都可以给我打电话。** – You can call me any time.

How it works. 任何 *rènhé* "any (at all)" goes before a noun. As the subject it needs 都 or 也. After a negative verb it means "no … at all": 他没有任何问题.

Spoken	More formal
谁都可以来	任何人都可以来

Watch out

- *wrong:* 任何人知道 → 任何人都知道.
- 任何 never stands alone: 任何人, 任何东西.



3. 既 … 也 / 又 … (both … and …)

Form: subject + 既 A 又 / 也 B

- **这个包既好看又实用。** *Zhège bāo jì hǎokàn yòu shíyòng.* – This bag is both good-looking and practical.
- **这个菜既便宜又好吃。** – This dish is both cheap and tasty.
- **他既是老师，也是作家。** – He is both a teacher and a writer.
- **我们既要学习，也要休息。** – We need both to study and to rest.

How it works. 既 *jì* A 又 / 也 B joins two qualities, roles or actions of the **same** subject, with equal weight. It is a little more formal and balanced than 又 …… 又 …….

既 …… 又 ……	不但 …… 而且 ……
two points, equal weight	builds up: the second is stronger
既高又瘦	不但便宜，而且质量很好

Watch out

- One subject only: *wrong:* 他既 ……，她又 …….
- The two should fit together; for a contrast, use 但是.

既 … 又 …: both … and …



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 为 … 而 … (for the sake of)

1. Complete (formal): “Strive for your dreams.” 为梦想 …… 奋斗。

2. In 不要为小事而生气, what does 而 do?

- A. means “but”
- B. links the cause to the feeling
- C. asks a question
- D. means “and then later”

3. Build: “Everyone was happy about his success.”

Put in order: 大家都 / 高兴。 / 而 / 为他的成功

4. True or false? 为了 …， … is the more everyday form. If false, correct it.

5. Your cousin works two jobs to save for university. Use 为 … 而 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 (any)

6. Complete: “Anyone can take part.” …… 人都可以参加。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 人任何都知道这件事。

- B. 任何人都知道这件事。
- C. 任何都人知道这件事。
- D. 任何人知道这件事。

8. Build: “I won’t tell anyone.”

Put in order: 不会告诉 / 我 / 人。/ 任何

9. True or false? 谁都可以来 is a spoken way to say 任何人都可以来. If false, correct it.

10. At the end of the lesson your teacher wants to be sure everyone understood. Use 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 既 … 也 / 又 … (both … and …)

11. Complete: “This dish is both cheap and tasty.” 这个菜既便宜 …… 好吃。

12. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他既高又瘦。
- B. 他高既又瘦。
- C. 既他高又瘦。
- D. 他既高，她又瘦。

13. Build: “He is both a teacher and a writer.”

Put in order: 他既是老师 / 也是 / ， / 作家。

14. True or false? 不但 … 而且 … usually makes the second point stronger. If false, correct it.

15. You are recommending a backpack to a friend. Use 既 … 也 / 又 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Say “Any student must follow the rules.”

17. Join with 既 …… 又 ……: the restaurant is cheap / it is clean.

18. Say formally “He studies hard for the competition.”

19. Find and fix the problem. A note says 我一点儿水也没喝. A classmate thinks the writer drank a little water. Correct the reading.

20. Use it yourself. Write that any student must follow the rules, and that the library is both quiet and convenient.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 为 ... 而 ... (for the sake of)

1. 而

为 A 而 B links the purpose and the action.

2. B. links the cause to the feeling

In 为 + cause + 而 + verb, 而 links the cause to the reaction: 不要为小事而生气 "Don't get angry over small things." It does not mean "but" here.

3. 大家都为他的成功而高兴。

为 + cause + 而 + feeling.

4. True.

True. 为了 …, … is the everyday way to state a purpose. 为 … 而 … is more formal and written.

5. Model answer: 他为了上大学而努力工作。

Check your answer:

- In this pattern 为 is read wèi ("for"); it is written or formal speech. In chat, 为了 …, 我 … is enough.
- 而 does not mean "but" here; it links the purpose or cause to the action.

■ 2. 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 (any)

6. 任何

任何 + noun + 都.

7. B. 任何人都知道这件事。

任何人都知道这件事 is right: 任何 + noun as the subject needs 都 before the verb, and 任何 always comes before its noun.

8. 我不会告诉任何人。

Negative verb + 任何 + noun.

9. True.

QW + 都 is the spoken equivalent.

10. Model answer: 有任何问题，都可以问我。

Check your answer:

- As a subject, 任何 + noun needs 都 / 也: 任何人都知道, not 任何人知道.
- 任何 goes before a noun only; it does not stand alone: 任何人, not just 任何.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 既 … 也 / 又 … (both … and …)

11. 又

既 A 又 B (既 A 也 B is also correct).

12. A. 他既高又瘦。

他既高又瘦 is right: 既 A 又 B describes one subject, with both words after it. A second subject (她) breaks the pattern.

13. 他既是老师，也是作家。

既是 …，也是 ….

14. True.

It builds up; 既 … 又 … gives equal weight.

15. Model answer: 这个包既好看又实用。

Check your answer:

- Both parts belong to one subject: 他既 … 又 …, not 他既 …，她又 ….
- Usually both qualities point the same way (既便宜又好吃); for a clear contrast, use 但是 (很便宜，但是不好吃).

■ Mixed practice

16. 任何学生都要遵守规定。任何 + noun needs 都 or 也.

17. 这家饭馆既便宜又干净。

18. 他为参加比赛而努力学习。为 + purpose + 而 + action.

19. 一点儿 …… 也没 means "not even a little": the writer drank no water at all.

20. Model answer. 任何学生都要遵守规定。图书馆既安静又方便。

Review later. Tomorrow, use 任何 …… 都 and 既 …… 又 …… in two sentences about your school.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Basic sentence patterns

HSK 4

Patterns that stress a point. 连 …… 都/也 …… means "even" and picks the least likely case; 一点 …… 也/都不 means "not at all"; question word + 都 means "every"; A 是 B 的 N 倍 compares sizes; and 不知道 …… 好 says you cannot decide.

At a glance

- **1.** 连 … 都 / 也 – even: 这个连小孩子都知道!
- **2.** 连 … 都 … 不 / 没 – not even: 我今天忙得连一口水都没喝。
- **3.** 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 – not at all: 一点儿也不可怕。
- **4.** Question Word + 都 – every: 哪儿都行，你选吧。
- **5.** A 是 B 的 N 倍 – N times: 现在的房子是以前的三倍。
- **6.** 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 – unsure what is best: 我不知道送什么好。

1. 连 ... 都 / 也 (even)

Form: 连 + X + 都 / 也 + verb

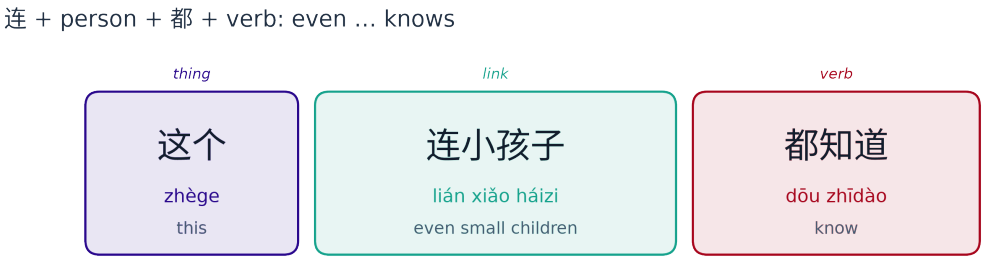
- **这个连小孩子都知道!** *Zhège lián xiǎo háizi dōu zhīdào!* – Even a small child knows that!
- **连我奶奶都用微信。** – Even my grandma uses WeChat.
- **连老师也不知道答案。** – Even the teacher doesn't know the answer.
- **他连周末都在工作。** – He works even at weekends.

How it works. 连 *lián* X 都 / 也 means "even X". X is the least likely case, which makes the statement strong. X can be the subject or an object moved forward, and the 连 phrase comes before the verb.

Positive	Negative
连小孩子都会 (even a child can, so it's easy)	连一个字都不会写 (not even one, so it's hopeless)

Watch out

- Keep 都 / 也: *wrong:* 连他来了 → 连他都来了.
- X must be the surprising case; 连 + an ordinary item sounds odd.



2. 连 ... 都 ... 不 / 没 (not even)

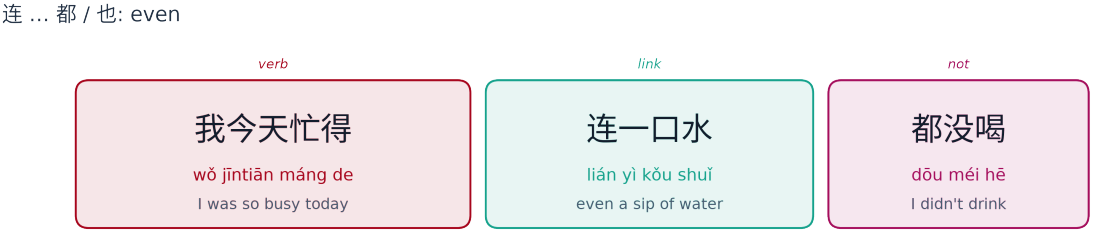
Form: 连 + X + 都 / 也 + 不 / 没 + verb · 连 + verb + 都没 + verb

- **我今天忙得连一口水都没喝。** *Wǒ jīntiān máng de lián yì kǒu shuǐ dōu méi hē.* – I was so busy today I didn't even have a sip of water.
- **他连我的名字都不知道。** – He doesn't even know my name.
- **他连一个字都没写。** – He didn't write a single character.
- **他连想都没想就答应了。** – He agreed without even thinking.

How it works. X is the smallest or easiest thing, and still it didn't happen: "not even X". The 连 phrase moves **before** the verb, and 都 or 也 must follow it. Repeating the verb (连看都没看, 连想都没想) shows how little care was taken.

Watch out

- *wrong:* 没吃连饭 → 连饭都没吃.
- Keep 都 / 也: *wrong:* 连水没喝 → 连水都没喝.



3. 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 (not at all)

Form: 一点儿 + 也 / 都 + 不 / 没 + adjective / verb

- **一点儿也不可怕。** *Yìdiǎnr yě bù kěpà.* – It wasn't scary at all.
- **这个一点儿也不贵。** – This isn't expensive at all.
- **我一点儿都不累。** – I'm not tired in the slightest.
- **他一点儿也没变，还是那么年轻。** – He hasn't changed at all; he still looks so young.

How it works. 一点儿也 / 都 + a negative is the strongest denial: "not … at all". It goes before 不 or 没, and it always needs one.

有点儿冷	不太冷	一点儿也不冷
a bit cold	not very cold	not cold at all

Watch out

- *wrong:* 不一点儿冷 → 一点儿也不冷.
- *wrong:* 一点儿也冷 is wrong; "a bit cold" is 有点儿冷.

一点儿也不: not … at all



4. Question Word + 都 (every)

Form: question word (+ noun) + 都 + (不 / 没) + verb

- **哪儿都行，你选吧。** *Nǎr dōu xíng, nǐ xuǎn ba.* – Anywhere is fine; you choose.
- **他什么都会。** – He can do anything.
- **什么菜都好吃。** – Every dish is delicious.
- **我怎么都找不到。** – I can't find it no matter how I look.

How it works. A question word before 都 means "every-, any-"; with a negative it means "no-". The question word moves **before** 都 and the verb. With a noun: 哪个 / 什么 + noun + 都.

Question word + 都	Meaning
谁都	everyone
什么都	everything
哪儿都	everywhere
什么时候都	any time
怎么都	however (you try)

Short, spoken	Spelled out
谁都可以来	不管谁来，我都欢迎

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我吃什么都 → 我什么都吃.



5. A 是 B 的 N 倍 (N times)

Form: A 是 B 的 N 倍 · A 比 B 多 N 倍 · 增加了 N 倍

- **现在的房子是以前的三倍。** *Xiànzài de fángzi shì yǐqián de sān bèi.* – My place now is three times the size of my old one.
- **她的工资是他的两倍。** – Her salary is twice his.
- **这个城市的人口是那个的两倍。** – This city's population is twice that city's.
- **价格增加了一倍。** – The price has doubled.

How it works. 倍 *bèi* counts multiples. The two patterns count differently.

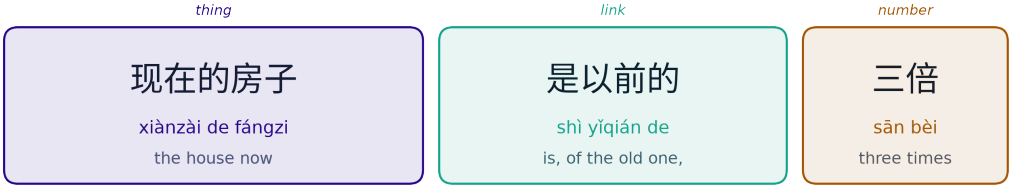
Pattern	Counts	B = 10, so A =
A 是 B 的两倍	the total	20 (×2)
A 比 B 多一倍	the increase on top	20 (×2)
A 比 B 多两倍	the increase on top	30 (×3, in careful usage)

增加了一倍 also counts the increase: it doubled. For "half as much", 倍 is not used: A 是 B 的一半.

Watch out

- 倍 is multiples; 次 is occasions: *wrong:* 我去过三倍 → 我去过三次.

A 是 B 的 … 倍: … times as much



6. 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 (unsure what is best)

Form: 不知道 + verb + question word + 好 · 你说 + … + 好?

- **我不知道送什么好。** *Wǒ bù zhīdào sòng shénme hǎo.* – I don't know what would be best to give.
- **他不知道怎么办好。** – He didn't know what to do.
- **我不知道去北京好还是去上海好。** – I don't know whether it's better to go to Beijing or Shanghai.
- **你说我买哪个好?** – Which do you think I should buy?

How it works. 好 at the end of the embedded choice means "would be best". The question word sits inside the sentence, so a 不知道 sentence is a statement, with no question mark. To ask for advice, use 你说 … 好? or 你知道 …… 好吗?

Watch out

- 好 goes at the end of the choice: *wrong:* 不知道好说什么 → 不知道说什么好.

Verb + 什么好: what would be best to …



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 连 ... 都 / 也 (even)

1. Complete: "Even my grandma uses WeChat." …… 我奶奶都用微信。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 老师连也不知道。
- B. 连老师也不知道。
- C. 连老师不知道。
- D. 连也老师不知道。

3. Build: "He works even at weekends."

Put in order: 工作。/ 都在 / 他 / 连周末

4. True or false? 连小孩子都会 suggests the task is easy. If false, correct it.

5. A friend doesn't know that you shouldn't touch a hot stove. Use 连 … 都 / 也. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 连 ... 都 ... 不 / 没 (not even)

6. Complete: "He doesn't even know my name." 他 …… 我的名字都不知道。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他没吃连早饭。
- B. 他连早饭没吃。
- C. 连他都早饭没吃。
- D. 他连早饭都没吃。

8. Build: "He agreed without even thinking."

Put in order: 就 / 都没想 / 他连想 / 答应了。

9. True or false? 他连一个字都没写 means he wrote a lot. If false, correct it.

10. You were so busy at work that you didn't have a single break. Use 连 … 都 … 不 / 没. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 (not at all)

11. Complete: "This isn't expensive at all." 这个一点儿 …… 不贵。

12. Which is the strongest denial?

- A. 一点儿也不难。
- B. 比较难。
- C. 不太难。
- D. 有点儿难。

13. Build: "He hasn't changed at all."

Put in order: 也没 / 他 / 一点儿 / 变。

14. True or false? 一点儿也冷 means "a little cold". If false, correct it.

15. A friend asks if the horror film was scary. You thought it was boring. Use 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 4. Question Word + 都 (every)

16. Complete: "He can do anything." 他 …… 都会。

17. Which says "Every dish is delicious"?

- A. 菜什么都好吃。
- B. 都什么菜好吃。
- C. 好吃什么菜都。
- D. 什么菜都好吃。

18. Build: "I can't find it no matter how I look."

Put in order: 找 / 我 / 不到。/ 怎么都

19. True or false? 谁都可以来 means "Anyone can come." If false, correct it.

20. Your friend asks where you want to eat. You are hungry and not fussy. Use Question Word + 都. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. A 是 B 的 N 倍 (N times)

21. Complete: "Her salary is twice his." 她的工资是他的两 ……。

22. B has 10 books. 'A 比 B 多一倍' – how many does A have?

- A. 11
- B. 5
- C. 20
- D. 30

23. Build: "This city's population is twice that city's."

Put in order: 倍。/ 这个城市的人口 / 两 / 是那个的

24. True or false? 我去过三倍 means "I've been three times." If false, correct it.

25. You compare your new flat with the tiny room you rented before. Use A 是 B 的 N 倍. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 6. 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 (unsure what is best)

26. Complete: "I don't know what to say." 我不知道说什么 ……。

27. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我不知道买好哪个。
- B. 我不知道好买哪个。
- C. 好我不知道买哪个。
- D. 我不知道买哪个好。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

28. Build: “He didn’t know what to do.”

Put in order: 好。/ 怎么办 / 不知道 / 他

29. True or false? 你说我买哪个好? asks someone for advice. If false, correct it.

30. It’s your mother’s birthday tomorrow and you still haven’t chosen a gift. Use 不知道 + embedded choice + 好. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

31. Say “Even the teacher doesn’t know.”

32. Which sentence means “I am not tired at all”?

- A. 我一点儿累也不。
- B. 我一点儿也不累。
- C. 我也一点儿不累。

33. A ticket costs 20 yuan; another costs 60. Use 倍.

34. Say “I don’t know which one to buy.”

35. Find and fix the problem. A pen costs five yuan and a book ten. A classmate says 十元是五元的两倍 means the book costs ten yuan more. Correct it.

36. Use it yourself. Say you are not tired at all, and that for beginners this task is quite hard.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 连 ... 都 / 也 (even)

1. 连

连 X 都 = even X.

2. B. 连老师也不知道。

连老师也不知道 is right: 连 + X + 也/都 + verb. Leaving out 也/都 is wrong, and 连 must come directly before 老师.

3. 他连周末都在工作。

Subject + 连 X + 都 + verb.

4. True.

If even a child can, it must be easy.

5. Model answer: 这个连小孩子都知道!

Check your answer:

- 连 needs 都 or 也 after X: 连他都来了, not 连他来了.
- Choose X as the most surprising case; 连 + ordinary item sounds odd.

■ 2. 连 ... 都 ... 不 / 没 (not even)

6. 连

连 X 都 + negative = not even X.

7. D. 他连早饭都没吃。

他连早饭都没吃 is right: 连 + X + 都/也 + 没 + verb. Without 都 the sentence is incomplete, and 连 must come right before the item it stresses.

8. 他连想都没想就答应了。

连 + V + 都没 + V + 就 ….

9. False.

He didn't write a single character.

10. Model answer: 我今天忙得连一口水都没喝。

Check your answer:

- The 连 phrase comes before the verb: 连饭都没吃, not 没吃连饭.
- Keep 都 / 也: 连水没喝 is incomplete; say 连水都没喝 – "I didn't even drink water."

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 (not at all)

11. 也

一点儿也/都 + 不.

12. A. 一点儿也不难。

一点儿也不 + adjective is the strongest denial: 一点儿也不难 "not difficult at all". 不太难 is only "not very difficult".

13. 他一点儿也没变。

一点儿 + 也没 + verb.

14. False.

一点儿也 needs a negative; "a bit cold" is 有点儿冷.

15. Model answer: 一点儿也不可怕。

Check your answer:

- Put 一点儿也 before 不 / 没: 一点儿也不冷, not 不一点儿冷.
- It needs a negative; 一点儿也冷 is wrong. "A bit cold" is 有点儿冷.

■ 4. Question Word + 都 (every)

16. 什么

什么 + 都 = everything / anything.

17. D. 什么菜都好吃。

Question word + noun + 都 means "every": 什么菜都好吃 "Every dish is delicious." 什么 must come directly before the noun, and 都 before the predicate.

18. 我怎么都找不到。

怎么 + 都 + potential complement.

19. True.

True. A question word before 都 means "any / every": 谁都可以来 "Anyone can come."

20. Model answer: 哪儿都行，你选吧。

Check your answer:

- 我什么都吃, not 我吃什么都: the QW moves before 都.
- With a noun: 哪个 / 什么 + noun + 都: 什么菜都好吃 – "Every dish is delicious."

■ 5. A 是 B 的 N 倍 (N times)

21. 倍

A 是 B 的 N 倍.

22. C. 20

One time more = double = 20.

23. 这个城市的人口是那个的两倍。

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

A 是 B 的 N 倍.

24. False.

False. 倍 means "times" as a multiple (三倍 "three times as much"). Occasions are counted with 次: 我去过三次 "I've been three times."

25. Model answer: 现在的房子是以前的三倍。

Check your answer:

- 是 … 的两倍 = twice as much (×2), and so is 比 … 多一倍. In careful usage, 比 … 多两倍 = ×3.
- 倍 is for increases; for "half as much", use 一半: A 是 B 的一半.

■ 6. 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 (unsure what is best)

26. 好

不知道 + verb + QW + 好.

27. D. 我不知道买哪个好。

我不知道买哪个好 is right: 好 closes the embedded choice "which one would be best to buy", so it goes at the end.

28. 他不知道怎么办好。

不知道 + 怎么办 + 好.

29. True.

你说 … 好? turns the dilemma into a question.

30. Model answer: 我不知道送什么好。

Check your answer:

- The question word is embedded, so there is no question mark: 不知道买什么好。– "I don't know what to buy."
- 好 goes at the end of the embedded choice, not after 知道: 不知道说什么好, not 不知道好说什么.

■ Mixed practice

31. 连老师都不知道。连 picks the least likely person, and 都/也 follows.

32. B. 一点儿 + 也/都 + 不 + adjective.

33. 六十块是二十块的三倍。A 是 B 的 N 倍: 60 is three times 20.

34. 我不知道买哪个好。

35. 倍 compares by multiplying: ten is two times five. The difference is five yuan.

36. Model answer. 我一点儿也不累。对初学者来说，这个任务比较难。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 连 …… 都 sentence and one 一点儿也不 sentence about yourself.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Complex sentence patterns

HSK 4

Patterns that build longer sentences. Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 …… agrees with one point before raising a problem (便宜是便宜，但是太远了); 一 …… 就 …… links two events that follow at once; 一方面 …… 另一方面 …… weighs two sides.

At a glance

- **1.** Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … – concede, then object: 漂亮是漂亮，但是太贵了。
- **2.** 一 … 就 … – as soon as / whenever: 门铃一响，它就跑过去。
- **3.** 一方面 … ，一方面 … – on one hand / on the other: 一方面，大城市机会多；另一方面，生活也更方便。

1. Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … (concede, then object)

Form: X 是 X，但是 / 可是 / 就是 + objection

- **漂亮是漂亮，但是太贵了。** *Piàoliang shì piàoliang, dànshì tài guì le.* – It's pretty, all right, but it's too expensive.
- **好吃是好吃，但是太辣了。** – It's tasty, but it's too spicy.
- **去是想去，可是没时间。** – I do want to go, but I don't have time.
- **这本书我看是看了，但是没看懂。** – I did read the book, but I didn't understand it.

How it works. X 是 X concedes a point ("it is …, admittedly"); the next clause brings the objection with 但是, 可是 or 就是. It sounds more conversational than 虽然 …… 但是 ……, and shows you have considered the point.

Watch out

- Repeat the identical word: *wrong:* 贵是很贵 → 贵是贵.
- The second clause must object: *wrong:* 好是好，而且 …….

A 是 A，但是 …: it is …, but



2. 一 … 就 … (as soon as / whenever)

Form: subject$_1$ + 一 + verb A，subject$_2$ + 就 + verb B

- **门铃一响，它就跑过去。** *Ménlíng yì xiǎng, tā jiù pǎo guòqu.* – As soon as the doorbell rings, it runs over.
- **一下课，他就走了。** – As soon as class ended, he left.
- **他一喝咖啡就睡不着。** – Whenever he drinks coffee, he can't sleep.
- **我一看就懂了。** – I understood the moment I looked.

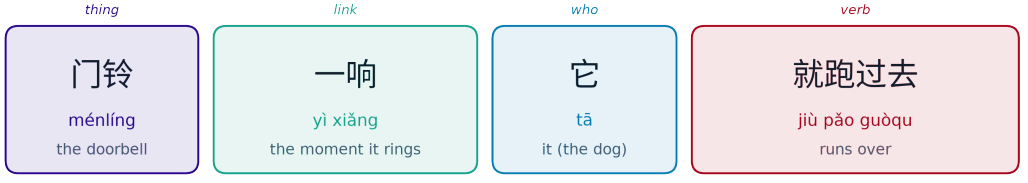
How it works. B follows immediately after A. It describes one event ("as soon as") or a habit ("whenever"). 一 goes after the first subject, before its verb; 就 goes after the second subject.

一 …… 就 ……	刚 …… 就 ……
as soon as; also habits	had only just … when (one past event)
他一喝咖啡就睡不着	我刚到，他就走了

Watch out

- *wrong:* 一我到 → 我一到; *wrong:* 就他走了 → 他就走了.

一 …，就 …: the moment …



3. 一方面 … ，一方面 … (on one hand / on the other)

Form: 一方面 ……，(另) 一方面 ……

- **一方面，大城市机会多；另一方面，生活也更方便。** *Yì fāngmiàn, dà chéngshì jīhuì duō; lìng yì fāngmiàn, shēnghuó yě gèng fāngbiàn.* – On the one hand, big cities have more opportunities; on the other, life is more convenient.
- **一方面是为了学习，一方面是为了交朋友。** – Partly to study, partly to make friends.
- **一方面我想去，另一方面又担心花钱太多。** – On the one hand I want to go; on the other, I worry about spending too much.

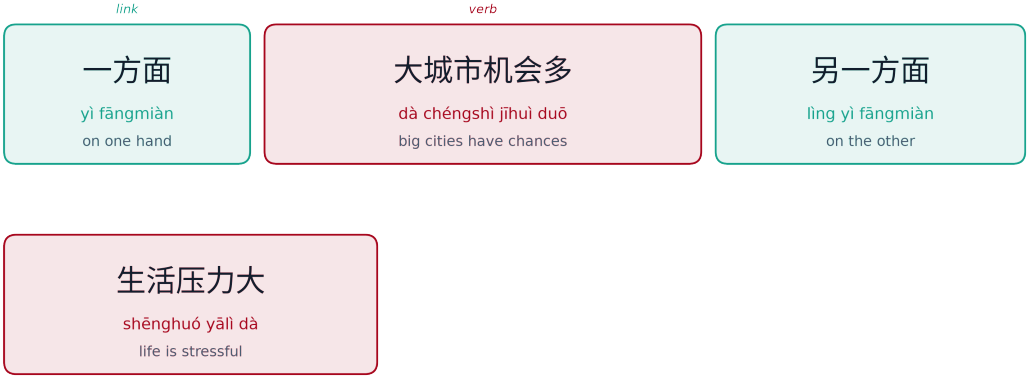
How it works. 一方面 *yì fāngmiàn* presents two aspects or reasons with equal weight, in an argument or explanation. They can point the same way or contrast. Each half starts its own clause, and the two halves keep the same shape.

一方面 …… 一方面 ……	不但 …… 而且 ……
two points, equal weight	builds up to a stronger point

Watch out

- 一方面 needs its partner clause: *wrong:* 一方面我想去。alone is incomplete.

一方面 …，另一方面 …: on one hand, on the other



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … (concede, then object)

1. Complete: “It’s cheap, all right, but the quality is poor.” 便宜是 ……，但是质量不好。

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 是好吃好吃，但是太辣了。
- B. 好吃是好吃，但是太辣了。
- C. 好吃是好吃，而且太辣了。
- D. 好吃好吃是，但是太辣了。

3. Build: “I do want to go, but I don’t have time.”

Put in order: 可是 / ， / 去是想去 / 没时间。

4. True or false? 漂亮是漂亮，但是 … concedes a point before objecting. If false, correct it.

5. Your friend loves a jacket in a shop. You agree it’s pretty, but the price is crazy. Use Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 一 ... 就 ... (as soon as / whenever)

6. Complete: "As soon as class ended, he left." 一下课，他 …… 走了。

7. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 一我到家，就他走了。
- B. 我到家一，他走就了。
- C. 我一到家，他就走了。
- D. 我一到家，就他走了。

8. Build: "Whenever he drinks coffee, he can't sleep."

Put in order: 睡不着。 / 他 / 就 / 一喝咖啡

9. True or false? 一 … 就 … can describe a habit. If false, correct it.

10. Your friend's dog gets excited every time someone rings the doorbell. Use 一 … 就 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 一方面 ... ，一方面 ... (on one hand / on the other)

11. Complete: "On the one hand it's cheap; on the other, it's close to home." 一方面很便宜，另 …… 离家很近。

12. What is wrong with 一方面我想去。?

- A. It needs 吗
- B. Nothing
- C. 一方面 needs its partner clause
- D. 一方面 must come last

13. Build: "Partly to study, partly to make friends."

Put in order: 交朋友。 / 一方面是为了 / ， / 一方面是为了学习

14. True or false? 一方面 … 一方面 … weighs two points equally. If false, correct it.

15. In a class debate, you explain why many young people move to big cities. Use 一方面 … ，一方面 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Your friend says the flat is cheap. You agree, but it is far. Use Adj 是 Adj.

17. Say "As soon as I get home I'll call you."

18. Give two sides with 一方面 …… 另一方面 ……: save money / save time.

19. Find and fix the problem. You hear 便宜是便宜，但是太远了. Does the speaker think it is expensive?

20. Use it yourself. Say you will call as soon as you get home, and give two reasons for a choice with 一方面 …… 另一方面 …….

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … (concede, then object)

1. 便宜

The same word repeats on both sides of 是.

2. B. 好吃是好吃，但是太辣了。

好吃是好吃，但是太辣了 is right: X 是 X repeats the same word with no 很, then a contrast with 但是. 而且 adds a point instead of objecting.

3. 去是想去，可是没时间。

A 是 A，可是 ….

4. True.

That is the purpose of the pattern.

5. Model answer: 漂亮是漂亮，但是太贵了。

Check your answer:

- Use the same word on both sides: 贵是贵 (the second one can take 很 or 挺: 贵是挺贵的).
- The second clause must object; 好是好，而且 … does not work.

■ 2. 一 … 就 … (as soon as / whenever)

6. 就

一 A，就 B.

7. C. 我一到家，他就走了。

我一到家，他就走了 is right: 一 and 就 each come after their own subject (我一 …, 他就 …).

8. 他一喝咖啡就睡不着。

Subject + 一 + verb, 就 + result.

9. True.

It means whenever as well as as soon as.

10. Model answer: 门铃一响，它就跑过去。

Check your answer:

- 一 goes before the first verb, after its subject: 我一到, not 一我到.
- 就 goes after the second subject: 他就走了, not 就他走了.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 一方面 … ，一方面 … (on one hand / on the other)

11. 一方面

一方面 …，另一方面 ….

12. C. 一方面 needs its partner clause

一方面 introduces one side and needs its partner: 一方面我想去，另一方面我没有时间. On its own the sentence is incomplete.

13. 一方面是为了学习，一方面是为了交朋友。

Parallel halves.

14. True.

不但 … 而且 … builds up instead.

15. Model answer: 一方面，大城市机会多；另一方面，生活也更方便。

Check your answer:

- Keep both halves in the same shape: 一方面是 …，一方面是 ….
- Do not use 一方面 alone; it needs its partner.

■ Mixed practice

16. 便宜是便宜，但是太远了。The first half agrees; the second half gives the problem.

17. 我一到家就给你打电话。

18. 一方面我想省钱，另一方面也想节省时间。

19. No. The speaker agrees it is cheap, then gives a problem: it is too far.

20. Model answer. 我一到家就给你打电话。我想坐火车，一方面能省钱，另一方面路上可以看书。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one Adj 是 Adj sentence about your school.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Not only... but also...

HSK 4

不但/不仅 …… 而且/还/也 …… means "not only … but also". If both halves have the same subject, put it before 不但: 他不但会说中文，而且会写汉字. If the subjects differ, put each after its connector: 不但他会，而且我也会.

不但 / 不仅 ... ，而且 / 还 / 也 ... (not only ... but also)

Form: 不但 / 不仅 A，而且 / 还 / 也 B · 不但不 A，反而 B

- **他不仅学习好，而且篮球打得也很好。** *Tā bùjǐn xuéxí hǎo, érqiě lánqiú dǎ de yě hěn hǎo.* – Not only is he a good student, he's also great at basketball.
- **这个手机不仅便宜，而且质量很好。** *Zhège shǒujī bùjǐn piányi, érqiě zhìliàng hěn hǎo.* – This phone is not only cheap but also good quality.
- **不仅学生喜欢他，老师也喜欢他。** *Bùjǐn xuésheng xǐhuan tā, lǎoshī yě xǐhuan tā.* – Not only do the students like him, the teachers do too.
- **她不但会说英语，还会说法语。** *Tā búdàn huì shuō Yīngyǔ, hái huì shuō Fǎyǔ.* – She can speak not only English but French as well.
- **这家饭馆不但菜好吃，而且服务也很周到。** *Zhè jiā fànguǎn búdàn cài hǎochī, érqiě fúwù yě hěn zhōudào.* – This restaurant not only has tasty food; the service is very attentive too.
- **吃了药，病不但没好，反而更重了。** *Chīle yào, bìng búdàn méi hǎo, fǎn'ér gèng zhòng le.* – After the medicine, the illness not only didn't improve; it got worse.

How it works. A and B point in the same direction, and B adds a further, often stronger, point: "not only A, but also B". 不仅 *bùjǐn* is a little more formal than 不但 *búdàn*. The second half uses 而且 (the most complete), 还 or 也, and 而且 often combines with 还 or 也: 而且还, 而且也.

Where 不但 goes depends on the subjects. With **one** subject, the subject comes first: 他不但聪明，而且很努力. With **two different** subjects, 不但 comes first and each clause has its own subject: 不但学生喜欢他，老师也喜欢他.

One subject	Two subjects
subject + 不但 A，而且 B	不但 + subject 1 + A，subject 2 + 也 B
他不但聪明，而且很努力。	不仅学生喜欢他，老师也喜欢他。

不但不 / 没 ……，反而 …… reverses an expectation: not only not A, but the opposite. 雨不但没停，反而越下越大.

Watch out

- For a contrast, use 虽然 …… 但是 ……: *wrong:* 这个手机不但便宜，而且质量很差 (cheap and bad is not a "further plus") → 这个手机虽然便宜，但是质量很差.

- With one subject, do not put 不但 before it: *wrong:* 不但他聪明，而且很努力 → 他不但聪明，而且很努力.
- 还 and 也 go after the subject, before the verb: *wrong:* 还她会说法语 → 她还会说法语.

In a passage

> 我家附近新开了一家图书馆。这家图书馆不仅书很多，而且环境很安静。周末不但学生来看书，很多老人也来这里看报纸。图书馆不但不收费，还提供免费的咖啡。

Read and notice. Find one sentence with one subject and one with two subjects. Where does 不但 / 不仅 sit in each?

不仅 …，而且 …: not only … but also



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. Complete: “This phone is not only cheap but also good quality.” 这个手机不仅便宜，…… 质量很好。

2. Which sentence is correct for two subjects?

- A. 不仅学生喜欢他，也老师喜欢他。
- B. 学生喜欢他不仅，老师也喜欢他。
- C. 不仅学生喜欢他，而且老师也喜欢他。

3. Build: “The illness not only didn’t improve, it got worse.”

Put in order: ， / 病不但没好 / 更重了。/ 反而

4. True or false? With one subject, 不但 comes after the subject. If false, correct it.

5. You are introducing a new classmate who is a strong student and a great athlete. Use 不但 / 不仅 … ， 而且 / 还 / 也 …. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 不但他会说中文，而且英文。

- B. 他不但会说中文，而且会说英文。
- C. 他会说中文不但，而且英文。

7. Find and fix the problem. A classmate writes 不但他会中文，而且英文. Correct the sentence.

8. Use it yourself. Say this library is not only quiet but also easy to get to.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 而且

不仅 … 而且 ….

2. C. 不仅学生喜欢他，而且老师也喜欢他。

With two subjects, 不仅 comes before the first one.

3. 病不但没好，反而更重了。

不但不/没 …，反而 ….

4. True.

True. With one subject, 不但 comes after it: 他不但聪明，而且很努力. With two different subjects, 不但 comes before the first subject.

5. Model answer: 他不仅学习好，而且篮球打得也很好。

Check your answer:

- One subject: subject first, then 不但: 他不但 …. Two subjects: 不但 first: 不但他 …，而且我也 ….
- The two points go the same direction; for a contrast use 但是.

■ Mixed practice

6. B. One subject goes first, and each half needs its own verb.

7. With one subject, put it first, and give each half its own verb: 他不但会说中文，而且会说英文.

8. Model answer. 这家图书馆不仅很安静，而且交通很方便。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one 不但 …… 而且 sentence with one subject and one with two subjects.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar adverbs

HSK 4

Three pairs of adverbs that look alike. 本来 is the original plan or situation; 原来 is what you have just found out. 常常 is simply "often"; 往往 describes what usually happens in a certain situation. 刚 is an adverb before the verb; 刚才 is a time word ("a moment ago") that can start a sentence.

At a glance

- **1.** 本来 vs 原来 – originally vs it turns out: 我本来想坐公交车，原来你开车来了！
- **2.** 常常 vs 往往 – often vs tends to: 下雨的时候，地铁往往很挤。
- **3.** 刚 vs 刚才 – adverb vs time-word: 我刚到，刚才在外面打电话。

1. 本来 vs 原来 (originally vs it turns out)

Form: 本来 / 原来 (originally) · 原来 + discovery · 本来就 (of course)

- **我本来想坐公交车，原来你开车来了！** *Wǒ běnlái xiǎng zuò gōngjiāochē, yuánlái nǐ kāi chē lái le!* – I was going to take the bus; oh, so you drove here!
- **他本来住在北京。/ 他原来住在北京。** – He originally lived in Beijing.
- **原来是这样！** – So that's how it is!
- **这本来就是你的事。** – This was your business from the start.

How it works. Choose by the job.

Job	本来	原来
original plan or state	✓ 本来的计划	✓ 原来的计划
a discovery: "so it turns out"	×	✓ 原来是你!
"of course, from the start" (本来就)	✓ 学生本来就应该学习	×

Watch out

- *wrong:* 本来是你！→ 原来是你!



2. 常常 vs 往往 (often vs tends to)

Form: 常常 + verb (often) · condition + 往往 + verb / adjective (tends to)

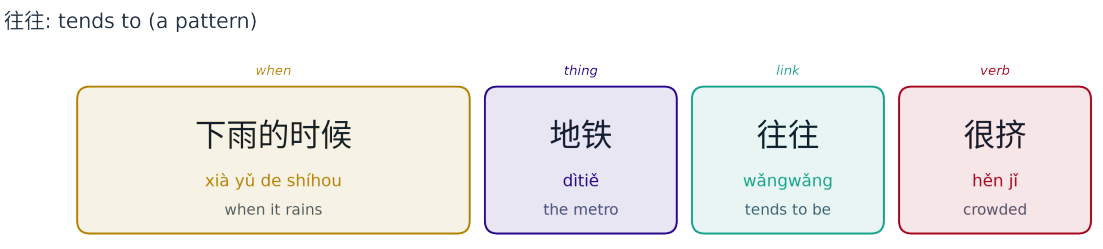
- **下雨的时候，地铁往往很挤。** *Xià yǔ de shíhou, dìtiě wǎngwǎng hěn jǐ.* – When it rains, the subway tends to be crowded.
- **周末公园里往往人很多。** – At weekends, parks tend to be full of people.
- **我常常去图书馆。** *Wǒ chángcháng qù túshūguǎn.* – I often go to the library.
- **以后我会常常来看你。** – I'll come and visit you often in future.

How it works.

常常	往往
how often something happens	a regular pattern under a condition
no condition needed	the condition (time, situation) is stated
also for the future and wishes	only for patterns seen so far
我常常喝咖啡	我熬夜的时候往往喝咖啡

Watch out

- *wrong:* 以后我会往往来 → 以后我会常常来.
- 他往往迟到 sounds unfinished; add the condition: 他下雨天往往迟到.



3. 刚 vs 刚才 (adverb vs time-word)

Form: subject + 刚 + verb (+ duration) · 刚才 + clause

- **我刚到，刚才在外面打电话。** *Wǒ gāng dào, gāngcái zài wàimiàn dǎ diànhuà.* – I've just arrived; a moment ago I was outside on the phone.
- **她在这儿刚工作了一个星期。** – She's only been working here for a week.
- **刚才我没听见。** – I didn't hear you just now.
- **刚才很热，现在凉快了。** – It was hot a moment ago; now it's cooler.

How it works. Three quick tests.

Test	刚	刚才
at the start of the sentence?	×	✓
before an adjective or 没?	×	✓
with a duration after the verb (two months)?	✓	×

Both work for a recent action: 他刚走 / 他刚才走了. 刚 sentences usually have no 了; 刚才 sentences take 了 as normal.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 本来 vs 原来 (originally vs it turns out)

1. You open the door and see your cousin: "Oh, it's you!" …… 是你!

2. "Students are of course supposed to study." Which fits? 学生 _____ 就应该学习。

- A. 本来
- B. 原来
- C. 后来
- D. 从来

3. Match each sentence to its meaning.

- (1) 原来是这样!
- (2) 这本来就是你的事。
- (3) 他原来住在上海。
- A. He used to live in Shanghai.
- B. So that's how it is!
- C. This was your business from the start.

4. True or false? 本来的计划 and 原来的计划 both mean "the original plan". If false, correct it.

5. You planned to take the bus, then found out your friend had been driving there all along. Use 本来 or 原来. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 常常 vs 往往 (often vs tends to)

6. Complete: "At weekends, parks tend to be full of people." 周末公园里 …… 人很多。

7. "I'll come and visit you often in future." Which fits? 以后我会 _____ 来看你。

- A. 常常
- B. 从来
- C. 往往
- D. 本来

8. Build: "When I stay up late, I tend to drink coffee."

Put in order: 我熬夜的时候 / 咖啡。/ 喝 / 往往

9. True or false? 往往 works well for future plans. If false, correct it.

10. You notice a pattern: the subway is always more crowded when it rains. Use 常常 or 往往. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 刚 vs 刚才 (adverb vs time-word)

11. Complete: "I didn't hear you just now." …… 我没听见。

12. Which says "She's only been working here for a week"?

- A. 她在这儿工作一个星期刚。
- B. 她在这儿刚工作了一个星期。
- C. 她刚才在这儿工作一个星期。
- D. 刚她在这儿工作一个星期。

13. Build: "It was hot a moment ago."

Put in order: 很 / 刚才 / 热。

14. True or false? 他刚走 and 他刚才走了 can both describe someone who left a moment ago. If false, correct it.

15. You arrive at the café and your friend says he has only just sat down; a moment ago he was outside on the phone. Use 刚 or 刚才. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

16. Choose 本来 or 原来: …… 是你! (you just found out) / 我 …… 想走路去，后来坐了车。

17. Choose 刚 or 刚才: …… 你去哪儿了? / 我 …… 到家。

18. Choose 常常 or 往往: 我 …… 去图书馆。/ 周末这条路 …… 很堵。

19. Find and fix the problem. You suddenly find out your friend speaks Chinese. A classmate says 本来你会说中文! Correct it.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

20. Use it yourself. Say you originally meant to take the bus but changed to the metro, and that this road is usually busy at weekends.

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 本来 vs 原来 (originally vs it turns out)

1. 原来

A discovery takes 原来.

2. A. 本来

本来就 = naturally, of course.

3. (1) B: 原来是这样！ = So that's how it is!; (2) C: 这本来就是你的事。= This was your business from the start.; (3) A: 他原来住在上海。= He used to live in Shanghai.

原来 = discovery or originally; 本来就 = of course.

4. True.

For "original(ly)", both words work.

5. Model answer: 我本来想坐公交车，原来你开车来了！

Check your answer:

- **本来就** = naturally, should have been obvious: 这件事本来就是你的错 – "This was your fault from the start."
- 原来就 does not carry this "of course" meaning.

■ 2. 常常 vs 往往 (often vs tends to)

6. 往往

A pattern under a condition (weekends) takes 往往.

7. A. 常常

Future and wishes take 常常.

8. 我熬夜的时候往往喝咖啡。

Condition + 往往 + verb.

9. False.

False. 往往 states what tends to happen from past experience and cannot describe future plans. For plans use 常常: 以后我会常常来看你.

10. Model answer: 下雨的时候，地铁往往很挤。

Check your answer:

- 往往 is not for wishes or the future: 以后我会常常来, not 以后我会往往来.
- 往往 sounds best with the situation in which it happens: 他下雨天往往迟到. For a plain habit, 常常 is simpler: 他常常迟到.

■ 3. 刚 vs 刚才 (adverb vs time-word)

11. 刚才

Only 刚才 starts the sentence and goes with 没.

12. B. 她在这儿刚工作了一个星期。

刚 goes before the verb, and the duration follows the verb with 了; 刚才 means "a moment ago" and cannot carry a duration.

13. 刚才很热。

刚才 + adjective.

14. True.

True. 刚 is an adverb ("just"): 他刚走. 刚才 is a time noun ("a moment ago") and usually takes 了: 他刚才走了. Both fit someone who left a moment ago.

15. Model answer: 我刚到，刚才在外面打电话。

Check your answer:

- At the start of the sentence, or before 没? Use 刚才: 刚才没听见 – "I didn't hear it just now."
- How long since it happened (two months)? Use 刚: 刚来两个月 – "I've only been here for two months."

■ Mixed practice

16. 原来是你！我本来想走路去，后来坐了车。原来 = discovering the truth; 本来 = the original plan.

17. 刚才你去哪儿了？我刚到家。刚才 is a time word that can start the sentence; 刚 goes before the verb.

18. 我常常去图书馆 (a simple frequency)。周末这条路往往很堵 (what usually happens in that situation).

19. When you have just discovered the truth, use 原来: 原来你会说中文！本来 is for an original plan or situation.

20. Model answer. 我本来想坐公共汽车，后来改坐地铁了。周末这条路往往很堵。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 本来, 原来 and 刚才.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar prepositions

HSK 4

Two pairs of prepositions. 关于 introduces a topic ("about"); 对于 introduces the person or thing an attitude is aimed at ("regarding, towards"). 离 measures the distance between two points; 从 marks where a movement starts.

At a glance

- **1.** 关于 vs 对于 – about vs regarding: 这是一部关于气候变化的纪录片。
- **2.** 离 vs 从 – gap from vs starting point: 我家离学校很近，我每天从家走路来。

1. 关于 vs 对于 (about vs regarding)

Form: 关于 + topic (的 + noun) · 对于 + target, attitude · subject + 对于 + target + …

- **这是一部关于气候变化的纪录片。** *Zhè shì yí bù guānyú qìhòu biànhuà de jìlùpiàn.* – This is a documentary about climate change.
- **对于这个问题，大家的看法不同。** – On this issue, opinions differ.
- **对于这个决定，我很满意。** *Duìyú zhège juédìng, wǒ hěn mǎnyì.* – I'm very satisfied with this decision.
- **关于这件事，我不知道。** – I don't know anything about this.

How it works.

关于 *guānyú*	对于 *duìyú*
the topic or content: "about"	the target of an attitude or action: "regarding"
一篇关于环境的文章	对于学生来说 ……
only before the subject	before or after the subject: 我对于这件事没有意见
titles: 《关于环境保护》	opinions: 对于这个问题，我的看法是 ……

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我关于这件事不知道 → 关于这件事，我不知道.



2. 离 vs 从 (gap from vs starting point)

Form: A 离 B + 远 / 近 / distance · 从 + start (+ 到 + end) + verb

- **我家离学校很近，我每天从家走路来。** *Wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào hěn jìn, wǒ měi tiān cóng jiā zǒulù lái.* – My home is close to school; every day I walk here from home.
- **车站离这儿很近。** – The station is very close to here.
- **从家到学校要二十分钟。** – It takes twenty minutes from home to school.
- **会议从九点开到十一点。** – The meeting runs from nine to eleven.

How it works.

离 *lí*	从 *cóng*
the gap between two points	the starting point of movement or time
远, 近, how many km; time left: 离考试还有三天	从北京出发, 从八点开始, 从 …… 到 ……

Both in one sentence: 从我家到公司很远，因为公司离市中心很远.

Watch out

- A gap takes 离: *wrong:* 从这儿很远 → 离这儿很远.
- Movement takes 从: *wrong:* 离这儿走 → 从这儿走.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

■ 1. 关于 vs 对于 (about vs regarding)

1. Complete: “an article about the environment” 一篇 …… 环境的文章

2. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我关于这件事很满意。
- B. 关于这件事，我不知道。
- C. 我这件事关于不知道。

- D. 我关于这件事不知道。

3. Build: “I’m very satisfied with this decision.”

Put in order: 我 / 对于这个决定 / 很满意。/ ,

4. True or false? 对于 can come after the subject. If false, correct it.

5. You write a report on a documentary about climate change and how students feel about it. Use 关于 or 对于. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 离 vs 从 (gap from vs starting point)

6. Complete: “The station is very close to here.” 车站 …… 这儿很近。

7. “The meeting runs from nine to eleven.” Which fits? 会议 _____ 九点开到十一点。

- A. 从
- B. 在
- C. 向
- D. 离

8. Build: “It takes twenty minutes from home to school.”

Put in order: 二十分钟。/ 从家 / 要 / 到学校

9. True or false? 离考试还有三天 uses 离 for time. If false, correct it.

10. A new classmate asks where you live and how you get to school. Use 离 or 从. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

11. Choose 离 or 从: 我们明天 …… 北京出发。/ 我家 …… 学校很远。

12. Choose 关于 or 对于: 这是一本 …… 中国历史的书。/ …… 这个问题，大家的看法不一样。

13. Find and fix the problem. A traveller says 我们离北京出发 for “We set off from Beijing.” Correct it.

14. Use it yourself. Say today’s talk is about study methods, and that you are very interested in learning Chinese.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 关于 vs 对于 (about vs regarding)

1. 关于

Topic and content take 关于.

2. B. 关于这件事，我不知道。

关于这件事，我不知道 is right: a 关于 phrase ("about …") goes at the start, before the subject. For an attitude such as 满意, use 对 instead.

3. 对于这个决定，我很满意。

对于 + target, then the attitude.

4. True.

True. 对于 can follow the subject: 他对于这件事没有意见. 关于 cannot; it normally starts the sentence or comes before 的 + noun (关于环境的文章).

5. Model answer: 这是一部关于气候变化的纪录片。对于这个问题，大家的看法不同。

Check your answer:

- A 关于 phrase doesn't go between the subject and the verb: 关于这件事，我不知道, not 我关于这件事不知道.
- 对于 can go either before or after the subject: 对于他，… / 他对于 ….

■ 2. 离 vs 从 (gap from vs starting point)

6. 离

A gap takes 离.

7. A. 从

A starting point paired with 到 takes 从 (从 … 到 …). 在 marks a single point in time, so it cannot open a span.

8. 从家到学校要二十分钟。

从 … 到 … + time needed.

9. True.

离 can measure the gap until an event.

10. Model answer: 我家离学校很近，我每天从家走路来。

Check your answer:

- A gap (远, 近, how many km) takes 离: 离这儿很远, not 从这儿很远.
- Movement or a beginning takes 从: 从这儿走, not 离这儿走.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ Mixed practice

11. 我们明天从北京出发 (starting point)。我家离学校很远 (distance).

12. 这是一本关于中国历史的书 (topic)。对于这个问题，大家的看法不一样 (the thing views are aimed at).

13. A starting point takes 从: 我们从北京出发. 离 measures distance: 我家离北京很远.

14. Model answer. 今天的报告是关于学习方法的。我对学习中文很感兴趣。

Review later. Tomorrow, make one sentence each with 离, 从, 关于 and 对于.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar functions

HSK 4

Word pairs that look alike but do different jobs. 反而 goes before the verb, while 相反 usually starts a clause. 肯定, 确定 and 一定 all mean "sure" in different ways. 适合 takes an object; 合适 is an adjective. 按时 is "on schedule", 及时 "in time". 咱们 always includes the listener. 仔细 is about details, 认真 about attitude. 共同 means shared, 一起 together. 许多 is a written "many". 主动 means without being asked, and 普遍 means common among many people.

At a glance

- **1.** 反而 vs 相反 – instead vs on the contrary: 吃了药，头疼反而更厉害了。
- **2.** 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 – sure / certain: 我确定是八点，你一定要早点儿到。
- **3.** 适合 vs 合适 – to suit vs suitable: 这件衣服很合适，颜色也很适合你。
- **4.** 按时 vs 及时 – on time vs in time: 医生来得很及时。
- **5.** 咱们 vs 我们 – we, including you: 咱们一起去吃饭吧！
- **6.** 仔细 vs 认真 and 小心 – careful: 请再仔细检查一下。
- **7.** 共同 vs 一起 – shared, together: 我们有很多共同的爱好。
- **8.** 许多 vs 很多 and 不少 – many: 公园里有许多老人在锻炼身体。
- **9.** 主动 vs 被动 and 积极 – on your own initiative: 他主动帮我拿书。
- **10.** 普遍 vs 经常 and 一般 – common, widespread: 现在用手机付钱很普遍。

1. 反而 vs 相反 (instead vs on the contrary)

Form: subject + 反而 + verb (instead) · 相反，… (on the contrary) · A 和 B 相反

- **吃了药，头疼反而更厉害了。** *Chīle yào, tóuténg fǎn'ér gèng lìhai le.* – After taking the medicine, my headache actually got worse.
- **他没生气，反而笑了。** – He didn't get angry; instead he laughed.
- **他不懒。相反，他很努力。** – He isn't lazy. On the contrary, he works very hard.
- **我们的意见正好相反。** – Our opinions are exactly the opposite.

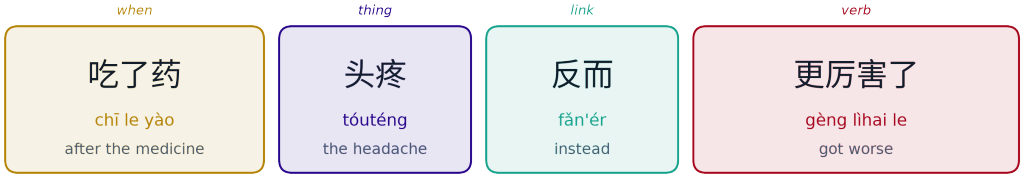
How it works. Position decides.

反而 ***fǎn'ér***	**相反** ***xiāngfǎn***
adverb: after the subject, before the verb	starts a sentence with a comma; or means "opposite"
the result is the opposite of what was expected	意见相反, 方向相反, 正好相反
often after 不但没 / 不但不	

Watch out

- *wrong:* 病相反重了 → 病反而重了.

反而: on the contrary



2. 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 (sure / certain)

Form: 一定 + verb · 不一定 · 肯定 + verb / judgement · 确定 (+ object)

- **我确定是八点，你一定要早点儿到。** *Wǒ quèdìng shì bā diǎn, nǐ yídìng yào zǎodiǎnr dào.* – I'm sure it's eight; you really must get there early.
- **他肯定忘了。** – He's definitely forgotten.
- **贵的不一定好。** – Expensive things aren't necessarily good.
- **你确定吗?** – Are you sure?

How it works.

Word	Job	Example
一定	must; certainly will	你一定要来, 他一定会来
不一定	not necessarily	贵的不一定好
肯定	definitely (a confident guess); also "approve"	他肯定忘了; 老师肯定了我的想法
确定	verb: be sure of, confirm, fix	你确定吗? 时间还没确定

Watch out

- 确定 is not an adverb before another verb: *wrong:* 他确定会来 → 他一定会来.

确定: be sure (a fact) · 一定: must (a demand)



3. 适合 vs 合适 (to suit vs suitable)

Form: 适合 + object (verb) · 合适 (adjective, no object)

- **这件衣服很合适，颜色也很适合你。** *Zhè jiàn yīfu hěn héshì, yánsè yě hěn shìhé nǐ.* – This jacket fits well, and the colour suits you too.
- **这个工作很适合他。** – This job suits him well.
- **这个时间很合适。** – This time is fine.
- **我在找一个合适的工作。** – I'm looking for a suitable job.

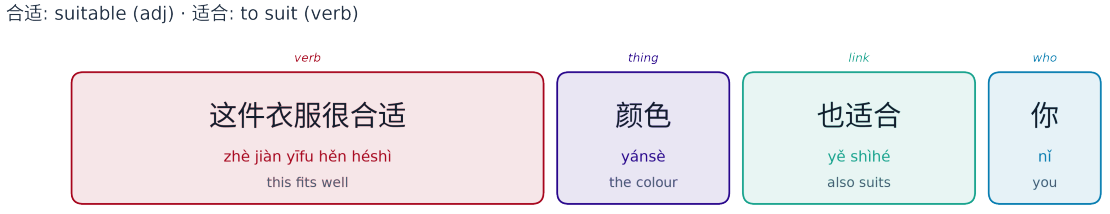
How it works. Ask: is there an object?

适合 ***shìhé***	**合适** ***héshì***
verb, needs an object	adjective, no object
适合你, 适合学生, 适合跑步	大小合适, 很合适

Both can describe a noun: 合适的工作 / 适合我的工作. To name the person with 合适, use 对: 对你来说很合适.

Watch out

- *wrong:* 合适你 → 适合你; *wrong:* 这个时间很适合 → 这个时间很合适.



4. 按时 vs 及时 (on time vs in time)

Form: 按时 + verb (a set time) · 及时 + verb / verb + 得 + (很) 及时 (in time)

- **请按时交作业。** *Qǐng ànshí jiāo zuòyè.* – Please hand in your homework on time.
- **医生来得很及时。** – The doctor came just in time.
- **有问题要及时告诉老师。** – If there's a problem, tell the teacher right away.

How it works. Ask: is there a set time? A deadline, timetable or schedule takes 按时. When speed matters – acting before it is too late – use 及时. Of the two, only 及时 can follow 得 or 很.

按时	**及时**	**准时**
on time (keeps to a schedule)	in time, promptly (before it's too late)	punctual, exactly on time

Watch out

- *wrong:* 发现得按时 → 发现得及时.



5. 咱们 vs 我们 (we, including you)

Form: 咱们 (we, including you) · 我们 (we, with or without you)

- **咱们一起去吃饭吧！** *Zánmen yìqǐ qù chī fàn ba!* – Let's go and eat together!
- **我们几个同事明天去长城，你想一起去吗？** – A few of us from work are going to the Great Wall tomorrow – want to come?
- **我们学校今年取得了很好的成绩。** – Our school did very well this year. (formal)

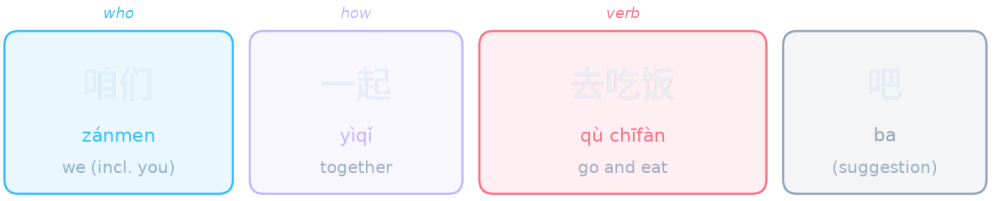
How it works. 咱们 normally includes the listener; it is friendly and spoken. 我们 can include or leave out the listener, and it is the only choice in formal writing.

咱们走吧	我们几个同事去，你去吗？	我们学校 (formal)
let's go (you too)	we're going – you?	our school

Watch out

- *wrong:* 咱们几个同事明天去，你想一起去吗？ → 我们几个同事 ……

咱们 = you and me (all of us)



6. 仔细 vs 认真 and 小心 (careful)

Form: 仔细 + 看 / 听 / 检查 · 认真 (attitude) · 小心 (watch out)

- **请再仔细检查一下。** *Qǐng zài zǐxì jiǎnchá yíxià.* – Please check it carefully once more.
- **他工作很认真。** – He is very conscientious at work.
- **小心路滑！** – Careful, the road is slippery!

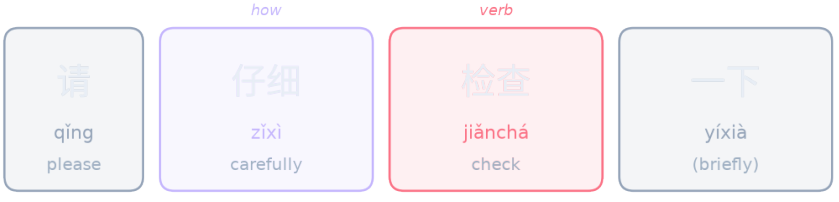
How it works. 仔细 = paying attention to details (looking, listening, checking). 认真 = serious, doing your best (an attitude: 认真对待). 小心 = careful to avoid danger.

仔细看	认真学习	小心！
look closely	study seriously	watch out!

Watch out

- *wrong:* 仔细对待 → 认真对待.

仔细 + 看 / 检查: look closely



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

7. 共同 vs 一起 (shared, together)

Form: 共同的 + noun · 共同 + 努力 / 完成 / 解决

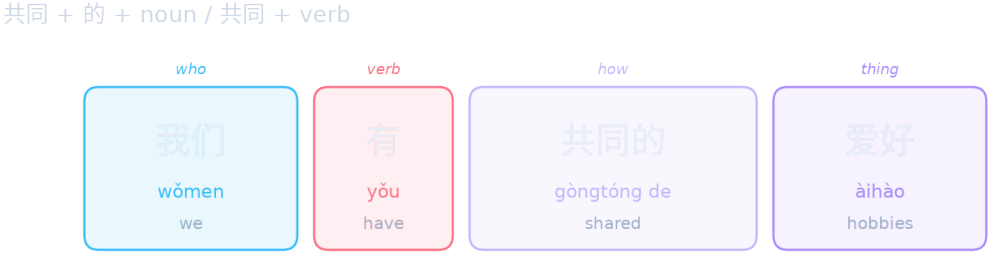
- **我们有很多共同的爱好。** *Wǒmen yǒu hěn duō gòngtóng de àihào.* – We have a lot of hobbies in common.
- **这个问题需要大家共同努力。** – This problem needs everyone to work on it together.
- **我们一起吃饭吧。** – Let's eat together.

How it works. 共同 = shared (before a noun, with 的) or jointly (before a verb, a bit formal). For everyday activities together, use 一起. The same = 一样.

共同的朋友	共同完成	一起吃饭
a friend of both	finish jointly	eat together

Watch out

- *wrong:* 我们共同吃饭吧 → 我们一起吃饭吧.



8. 许多 vs 很多 and 不少 (many)

Form: 许多 + noun · noun + 很多 (speech)

- **公园里有许多老人在锻炼身体。** *Gōngyuán li yǒu xǔduō lǎorén zài duànliàn shēntǐ.* – In the park, many old people are doing exercise.
- **这本书帮助了许多学生。** – This book has helped many students.
- **今天人很多！** – There are lots of people today!

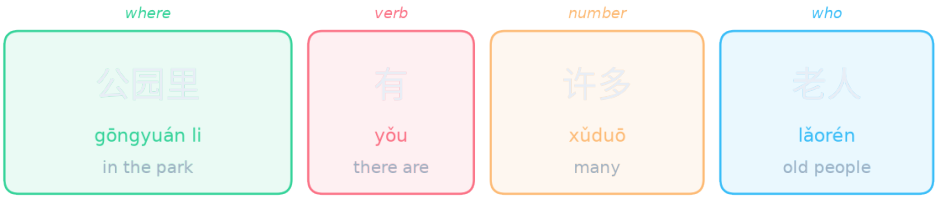
How it works. 许多 = many, a bit written, straight before a noun. 很多 is everyday and can also end a sentence. 不少 = quite a few.

许多学生	人很多	不少朋友
many students	lots of people	quite a few friends

Watch out

- *wrong:* 很许多 → 许多 / 很多.

许多 + noun (written: many)



9. 主动 vs 被动 and 积极 (on your own initiative)

Form: 主动 + verb · 很主动 · opposite 被动

- **他主动帮我拿书。** *Tā zhǔdòng bāng wǒ ná shū.* – He helped me carry the books without being asked.
- **有问题要主动问老师。** – If you have a question, ask the teacher yourself.
- **学习不能太被动。** – You shouldn't be too passive in your studies.

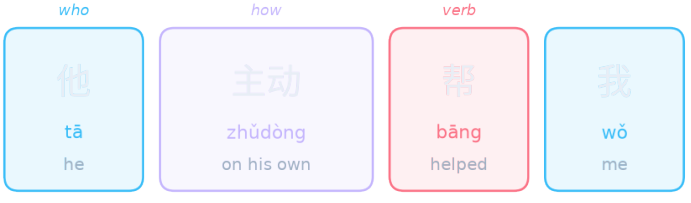
How it works. 主动 = on one's own initiative, without being asked; as an adjective, a compliment. Opposite: 被动. 积极 = keen; 自己 = without help.

主动帮忙	被动	积极参加
offer to help	passive	take part keenly

Watch out

- 主动 is about who starts, not about effort (努力).

主动 + verb: on your own initiative



exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

10. 普遍 vs 经常 and 一般 (common, widespread)

Form: thing + 很普遍 · 普遍 + 认为 / 存在 · 普遍的 + noun

- **现在用手机付钱很普遍。** *Xiànzài yòng shǒujī fù qián hěn pǔbiàn.* – Paying by phone is very common now.
- **大家普遍认为这个办法好。** – People generally think this idea is good.
- **他经常迟到。** – He is often late.

How it works. 普遍 = common among many people or places; before a verb, widely, generally. For how often something happens, use 经常. 一般 = usually.

很普遍	经常迟到	一般七点起床
very common	often late	usually up at seven

Watch out

- *wrong:* 他普遍迟到 → 他经常迟到.



Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. 反而 vs 相反 (instead vs on the contrary)

1. Complete: “He didn’t get angry; instead he laughed.” 他没生气，…… 笑了。

2. “Our opinions are exactly the opposite.” Which fits? 我们的意见正好 _____。

- A. 相反
- B. 反而
- C. 倒
- D. 却

3. Build: “After the medicine, the headache actually got worse.”

Put in order: ， 头疼 / 反而 / 更厉害了。 / 吃了药

4. True or false? 相反 can start a sentence followed by a comma. If false, correct it.

5. You took medicine for a headache, but it got worse. Use 反而 or 相反. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 2. 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 (sure / certain)

6. Ask: "Are you sure?" 你 …… 吗?

7. "Expensive things aren't necessarily good." Which fits? 贵的 _____ 好。

- A. 一定不
- B. 不肯定
- C. 不确定
- D. 不一定

8. Match each sentence to its meaning.

- (1) 你一定要来。
- (2) 他肯定忘了。
- (3) 时间还没确定。
- A. He's definitely forgotten.
- B. You really must come.
- C. The time hasn't been fixed yet.

9. True or false? 老师肯定了我的想法 means the teacher approved my idea. If false, correct it.

10. Your friend asks if the train leaves at eight. You checked the ticket twice. Use 肯定 or 确定 or 一定. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 3. 适合 vs 合适 (to suit vs suitable)

11. Complete: "This colour really suits you." 这个颜色很 …… 你。

12. Which sentence is correct?

- A. 这个时间很适合。
- B. 这个时间很适合合适。
- C. 这个时间合适你。
- D. 这个时间很合适。

13. Build: "I'm looking for a suitable job."

Put in order: 一个 / 我在找 / 工作。/ 合适的

14. True or false? 合适你 is correct. If false, correct it.

15. You are trying on a jacket and ask your friend's opinion. Use 适合 or 合适. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 4. 按时 vs 及时 (on time vs in time)

16. Please hand in your homework on time (by the deadline). 请 _____ 交作业。

- A. 及时
- B. 按时

17. The doctor came just in time. 医生来得很 _____。

- A. 按时
- B. 及时

18. The plane took off on time. 飞机 _____ 起飞了。

- A. 按时
- B. 及时

19. Complete: "Luckily it was found in time." 幸亏发现得 ……。

20. True or false? 准时 stresses "exactly at the agreed time". If false, correct it.

21. Write two sentences about a time you were ill: one with 按时 (taking medicine), one with 及时 (getting help). Use 按时 or 及时. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 5. 咱们 vs 我们 (we, including you)

22. Complete (to your friend): "Let's go and eat together!" …… 一起去吃饭吧!

23. "A few of us from work are going to the Great Wall tomorrow – want to come?" Which is right?

- A. 咱们几个同事明天去长城，你想一起去吗?
- B. 我们几个同事明天去长城，你想一起去吗?

24. Which fits a formal speech?

- A. 我们学校今年取得了很好的成绩。
- B. 咱们学校今年取得了很好的成绩。

25. True or false? In standard Mandarin, 咱们 includes the person you are talking to. If false, correct it.

26. Build: "A few of us from work are going to the Great Wall tomorrow – want to come?"

Put in order: 一起去吗? / 你想 / 我们几个同事 / 明天去长城,

27. Make two short weekend plans: one with a classmate who is coming (use 咱们), and one to tell a friend who might not come (use 我们 and ask if they want to join). Use 咱们 or 我们. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 6. 仔细 vs 认真 and 小心 (careful)

28. Complete: “Please check it carefully once more.” 请再 …… 检查一下。

29. “Careful, the road is slippery!” Which is right?

- A. 小心路滑!
- B. 仔细路滑!

30. “You should take this problem seriously.” Which fits best?

- A. 你应该认真对待这个问题。
- B. 你应该仔细对待这个问题。

31. Build: “Listen carefully – is someone outside?”

Put in order: 外面 / 仔细听，/ 是不是有人？/ 你

32. True or false? 他工作很认真 means he is serious and does his best at work. If false, correct it.

33. Describe a classmate who is good at exams in two sentences. Use 认真 for their attitude and 仔细 for how they check their work. Use 仔细 or 认真 and 小心. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 7. 共同 vs 一起 (shared, together)

34. Complete: “We have a lot of hobbies in common.” 我们有很多 …… 的爱好。

35. “Let’s eat together.” Which is right?

- A. 我们共同吃饭吧。
- B. 我们一起吃饭吧。

36. “This problem needs everyone to work on it together.” Which fits best?

- A. 这个问题需要大家共同努力。
- B. 这个问题需要大家一样努力。

37. Build: “He’s a friend of both of us.”

Put in order: 共同的 / 是我们 / 他 / 朋友。

38. True or false? 我们的爱好一样 means “our hobbies are the same”. If false, correct it.

39. Describe a good friend in two sentences: what you have in common (共同的), and something you often do together (一起). Use 共同 or 一起. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 8. 许多 vs 很多 and 不少 (many)

40. Complete (a written text): “This book has helped many students.” 这本书帮助了 …… 学生。

41. Which is wrong?

- A. 许多人

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- B. 很多人
- C. 很许多人

42. "There are lots of people today!" (said to a friend) Which sounds most natural?

- A. 今天人许多!
- B. 今天人很多!

43. Build: "In the park, many old people are doing exercise."

Put in order: 公园里 / 在 / 锻炼身体。/ 有许多老人

44. True or false? 不少 means "quite a few". If false, correct it.

45. Write two sentences about your city for a short report (with 许多), then say one of them to a friend (with 很多). Use 许多 or 很多 and 不少. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 9. 主动 vs 被动 and 积极 (on your own initiative)

46. Complete: "He helped me carry the books without being asked." 他 …… 帮我拿书。

47. What is the opposite of 主动?

- A. 积极
- B. 被动

48. "I made it myself (with no help)." Which is right?

- A. 这是我主动做的。
- B. 这是我自己做的。

49. Build: "If you have a question, ask the teacher yourself."

Put in order: 要 / 主动 / 有问题 / 问老师。

50. True or false? 他主动道歉了 means he apologised before anyone asked him to. If false, correct it.

51. In a job interview, describe yourself in two sentences using 主动 and 积极. Use 主动 or 被动 and 积极. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

■ 10. 普遍 vs 经常 and 一般 (common, widespread)

52. Complete: "Paying by phone is very common now." 现在用手机付钱很 ……。

53. "He is often late." Which is right?

- A. 他普遍迟到。
- B. 他经常迟到。

54. "People generally think this idea is good." Which is right?

- A. 大家普遍认为这个办法好。
- B. 大家一般认为这个办法普遍。

55. Build: "Going to bed too late is a common problem for students."

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Put in order: 普遍的 / 是学生 / 睡得太晚 / 问题。

56. True or false? 我一般七点起床 means "I usually get up at seven." If false, correct it.

57. Describe two things that are common among young people in your city (普遍), and one habit of your own (经常). Use 普遍 or 经常 and 一般. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

58. Choose 适合 or 合适: 这件衣服很 ……。/ 这件衣服 …… 你。

59. Choose 反而 or 相反: 吃了药，他 …… 更不舒服了。/ 他不但没生气，…… 还笑了。

60. Choose 一定 or 确定: 你 …… 要来！/ 我不 …… 他是不是在家。

61. Choose 仔细 or 认真: 请 …… 看看这张图。/ 他工作很 ……，从来不迟到。

62. Choose 共同 or 一起: 我们有很多 …… 的爱好。/ 下课以后我们 …… 去吃饭吧。

63. Find and fix the problem. A difficult book actually made the topic clearer. A classmate writes 我相反更明白了. Correct it.

64. Use it yourself. Say this coat suits him, and the size is right too.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ 1. 反而 vs 相反 (instead vs on the contrary)

1. 反而

反而 before the verb = instead.

2. A. 相反

As the predicate meaning "opposite", use 相反: 我们的意见正好相反. 反而, 却 and 倒 are adverbs that need a verb after them.

3. 吃了药，头疼反而更厉害了。

Subject + 反而 + verb phrase.

4. True.

True. 相反 can start a sentence, followed by a comma, to mean "on the contrary": 他没生气，相反，他很高兴.

5. Model answer: 吃了药，头疼反而更厉害了。

Check your answer:

- Inside a clause, before the verb, use 反而: 病反而重了, not 病相反重了.
- Starting a new sentence with a comma, or as "opposite", use 相反: 相反，…; 方向相反.

■ 2. 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 (sure / certain)

6. 确定

确定 is the verb "be sure".

7. D. 不一定

不一定 means "not necessarily": 贵的不一定好. 一定不 means "definitely not", which is a different claim, and 不确定 / 不肯定 mean "unsure".

8. (1) B: 你一定要来。= You really must come.; (2) A: 他肯定忘了。= He's definitely forgotten.; (3) C: 时间还没确定。= The time hasn't been fixed yet.

一定 = must, 肯定 = definitely, 确定 = fix / be sure.

9. True.

肯定 can be a verb meaning "affirm".

10. Model answer: 我确定是八点，你一定要早点儿到。

Check your answer:

- **确定** is a verb: be sure of, confirm, fix: 你确定吗? – "Are you sure?" 时间还没确定 – "The time hasn't been fixed."
- 确定 does not go before another verb as "certainly": 他一定会来, not 他确定会来 in that sense.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

■ 3. 适合 vs 合适 (to suit vs suitable)

11. 适合

With an object, 适合.

12. D. 这个时间很合适。

这个时间很合适 is right: 合适 is an adjective with no object. 适合 is a verb and needs one (适合你), so 很适合 alone is incomplete.

13. 我在找一个合适的工作。

合适的 + noun.

14. False.

合适 takes no object; say 适合你 or 对你合适.

15. Model answer: 这件衣服很合适，颜色也很适合你。

Check your answer:

- With an object, use 适合: 适合你, not 合适你.
- Without an object, use 合适: 这个时间很合适, not 这个时间很适合.

■ 4. 按时 vs 及时 (on time vs in time)

16. B. 按时

A deadline is a set time, so 按时.

17. B. 及时

Quickly enough to help, before it was too late – 及时. 按时 cannot follow 得 / 很.

18. A. 按时

Flights follow a timetable, so 按时.

19. 及时

After 得, use 及时.

20. True.

准时 = punctual; 按时 = following the schedule.

21. Model answer: 那次我发高烧，幸亏妈妈及时送我去了医院。医生让我每天按时吃药。

Check your answer:

- 按时 goes with a schedule; 及时 with getting help before it was too late.
- Both come before the verb (or after 得 for 及时).
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 5. 咱们 vs 我们 (we, including you)

22. 咱们

You and your friend – 咱们 (我们 also works).

23. B. 我们几个同事明天去长城，你想一起去吗?

The group is the speaker's colleagues, not the listener, so 我们.

24. A. 我们学校今年取得了很好的成绩。

Formal speech and writing take 我们.

25. True.

That is what makes it different from 我们. (Some regions use it more loosely.)

26. 我们几个同事明天去长城，你想一起去吗?

The listener is outside the group, so 我们.

27. Model answer: 咱们周六一起去看电影吧！我们周日去爬山，你想一起去吗?

Check your answer:

- 咱们 includes the listener; 我们 leaves the listener out until you ask.
- Both sentences sound friendly and natural.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 6. 仔细 vs 认真 and 小心 (careful)

28. 仔细

Looking at details – 仔细 (认真 also works).

29. A. 小心路滑!

Watch out for danger – 小心.

30. A. 你应该认真对待这个问题。

An attitude – 认真对待.

31. 你仔细听，外面是不是有人?

仔细 + verb.

32. True.

认真 = conscientious.

33. Model answer: 小林学习非常认真，每天都按时复习。考试的时候，她总是把答案仔细检查两遍。

Check your answer:

- 认真 describes an attitude.
- 仔细 goes before a verb about details.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 7. 共同 vs 一起 (shared, together)

34. 共同

Shared – 共同的.

35. B. 我们一起吃饭吧。

An everyday activity together – 一起.

36. A. 这个问题需要大家共同努力。

Jointly, towards one goal – 共同努力.

37. 他是我们共同的朋友。

共同的 + noun.

38. True.

一样 = the same.

39. Model answer: 我和小王有一个共同的爱好，就是踢足球。每个周末我们都一起去公园踢球。

Check your answer:

- 共同的 + noun names something shared.
- 一起 is for doing something together.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 8. 许多 vs 很多 and 不少 (many)

40. 许多

Many, before a noun – 许多.

41. C. 很许多人

许多 already means "many"; it doesn't take 很.

42. B. 今天人很多!

At the end of a sentence, and in speech – 很多.

43. 公园里有许多老人在锻炼身体。

有 + 许多 + noun.

44. True.

他有不少朋友.

45. Model answer: 我们的城市有许多公园和博物馆。每到周末，许多家庭都会带孩子去公园玩。(对朋友说：周末公园里人很多!)

Check your answer:

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 许多 goes straight before a noun.
- The spoken version uses 很多.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 9. 主动 vs 被动 and 积极 (on your own initiative)

46. 主动

Without being asked – 主动.

47. B. 被动

主动 (takes the initiative) vs 被动 (waits to be told).

48. B. 这是我自己做的。

Without help – 自己.

49. 有问题要主动问老师。

主动 + verb.

50. True.

主动 = on his own initiative.

51. Model answer: 我做事比较主动，遇到问题会主动想办法解决。在学校的时候，我也积极参加各种活动。

Check your answer:

- 主动 shows I start things without being asked.
- 积极 shows I'm keen.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ 10. 普遍 vs 经常 and 一般 (common, widespread)

52. 普遍

Common among many people – 普遍.

53. B. 他经常迟到。

How often he does it – 经常. 普遍 needs many people or places.

54. A. 大家普遍认为这个办法好。

普遍 + 认为 = widely, generally think.

55. 睡得太晚是学生普遍的问题。

普遍的 + noun.

56. True.

一般 = usually.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

57. Model answer: 在我们这儿，年轻人用手机点外卖很普遍，大家也普遍喜欢周末去咖啡馆。我自己经常在家做饭。

Check your answer:

- 普遍 describes many people.
- 经常 describes my own habit.
- I said it aloud before comparing with the model.

Your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

■ Mixed practice

58. 这件衣服很合适 (adjective)。这件衣服适合你 (verb + object).

59. 吃了药，他反而更不舒服了。他不但没生气，反而还笑了。反而 goes before the verb; 相反 would start a new clause: 相反，他笑了。

60. 你一定要来！我不确定他是不是在家。一定 stresses must or certainly; 确定 is a verb, "to be sure of".

61. 请仔细看看这张图 (look at the details)。他工作很认真 (a serious attitude).

62. 我们有很多共同的爱好 (shared)。下课以后我们一起去吃饭吧 (together, everyday).

63. Before the verb you need the adverb 反而: 我反而更明白了. 相反 starts a clause: 相反，我更明白了.

64. Model answer. 这件外套很适合他，大小也很合适。适合 takes an object; 合适 is an adjective.

Review later. Tomorrow, use 适合 and 合适 in two sentences about clothes.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Comparing similar time words

HSK 4

以后 and 的时候 both place an event in time, but differently. …… 以后 means "after": 下课以后 is after class has ended. …… 的时候 means "when, while": 下课的时候 is the moment class ends.

以后 vs 的时候 (after vs when)

Form: A 的时候，B (at the same time) · A (了) 以后，B (one after the other)

- **你打电话的时候我在做饭，吃完饭以后我给你回了电话。** *Nǐ dǎ diànhuà de shíhou wǒ zài zuò fàn, chīwán fàn yǐhòu wǒ gěi nǐ huíle diànhuà.* – When you called, I was cooking; after dinner I called you back.
- **我到的时候，他正在吃饭。** *Wǒ dào de shíhou, tā zhèngzài chī fàn.* – When I arrived, he was eating.
- **下课以后，我们去打球。** *Xià kè yǐhòu, wǒmen qù dǎ qiú.* – After class, we'll go and play ball.
- **小时候，我常常和爷爷去钓鱼。** *Xiǎo shíhou, wǒ chángcháng hé yéye qù diào yú.* – When I was little, I often went fishing with my grandpa.
- **你到了以后给我发个信息。** *Nǐ dàole yǐhòu gěi wǒ fā ge xìnxī.* – Send me a message after you arrive.
- **毕业以后，他去了上海工作。** *Bìyè yǐhòu, tā qùle Shànghǎi gōngzuò.* – After graduating, he went to work in Shanghai.

How it works. Both patterns put a time clause *before* the main clause; Chinese never puts it at the end the way English can ("I was cooking when you called"). To choose, ask one question: do the two events overlap, or does one follow the other?

A 的时候 means "during A, while A, when A": B happens inside A's time (我到的时候，他正在吃饭). A 以后 means "after A": A finishes, then B starts. Verb + 了 + 以后 stresses that A is complete: 你到了以后, 我做完作业以后.

的时候	以后
B happens during A	B happens after A ends
吃饭的时候别看手机。(don't look at it while eating)	吃饭以后别马上睡觉。(don't sleep right after)
上课的时候 (in class)	上课以后 (once class has started)

Watch out

- The time clause comes first: *wrong:* 我在做饭你打电话的时候 → 你打电话的时候，我在做饭.
- Do not add 当 and leave out 的时候: *wrong:* 当我到，他在吃饭 → 当我到的时候，他在吃饭 (or just 我到的时候).

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

- 以后 alone can also mean “in the future”: 以后我想当医生. After a verb it means “after”.

In a passage

> 昨天我回家的时候，妈妈正在做饭。吃饭的时候，我们聊了聊学校的事。吃完饭以后，我先洗了碗，然后开始做作业。做作业的时候，我把手机放在了别的房间。写完作业以后，我才看了一会儿手机。

Read and notice. Mark each 的时候 sentence “same time” and each 以后 sentence “one after the other”.

…的时候: while · …以后: after

when

你打电话的时候

nǐ dǎ diànhuà de shíhou

when you called

verb

我在做饭

wǒ zài zuò fàn

I was cooking

Practice

Cover the teaching pages before you answer. The answers are at the end.

1. During the meal: “Don’t look at your phone while eating.” 吃饭 …… 别看手机。

2. “After eating, don’t go to bed straight away.” Which fits? 吃饭 _____ 别马上睡觉。

- A. 以前
- B. 时候
- C. 的时候
- D. 以后

3. Build: “After class, we’ll go and play ball.”

Put in order: 打球。/ 下课以后 / ， / 我们去

4. True or false? 我到的时候，他正在吃饭 means he was eating when I arrived. If false, correct it.

5. You tell a friend about last night: you were cooking when he called, and you called back after dinner. Use 以后 or 的时候. Write your answer in Chinese, then say it aloud.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

6. Choose 以后 or 的时候: 我到家 …… 给你打电话。/ 我到家 ……，妈妈在做饭。

7. Find and fix the problem. A classmate translates 下课的时候 as “after class”. What is lost?

8. Use it yourself. Say you will phone after you get home, and that yesterday when you got home you were very tired.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

1. 的时候

Overlapping time takes 的时候.

2. D. 以后

After the meal has finished = 以后.

3. 下课以后，我们去打球。

A 以后，B.

4. True.

True. … 的时候 marks time that overlaps with the main event: when I arrived, he was in the middle of eating. 以后 would mean he ate after I arrived.

5. Model answer: 你打电话的时候我在做饭，吃完饭以后我给你回了电话。

Check your answer:

- If B happens during A, use 的时候; if B happens after A ends, use 以后.
- 吃饭的时候别看手机 (during the meal) is different from 吃饭以后别马上睡觉 (after the meal).

■ Mixed practice

6. 我到家以后给你打电话 (after arriving)。我到家的时候，妈妈在做饭 (at the time I arrived).

7. 的时候 means "when": the moment class ends. "After class" is 下课以后.

8. Model answer. 我到家以后给你打电话。昨天到家的时候，我很累。

Review later. Tomorrow, describe your evening with one 以后 and one 的时候.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Say it aloud: opinions, plans and suggestions

HSK 4

Choose a study plan together

Your class is deciding whether to revise alone or in a group. State a view, explain a reason, acknowledge a drawback and suggest a next step. These are useful choices for organising a turn, not compulsory stages of every Mandarin answer.

我觉得一起复习比较好，因为遇到问题可以互相帮助。不过，人太多可能会很吵。不如我们三个人一组，先试一次吧。

Wǒ juéde yìqǐ fùxí bǐjiào hǎo, yīnwèi yùdào wèntí kěyǐ hùxiāng bāngzhù. Búguò, rén tài duō kěnéng huì hěn chǎo. Bùrú wǒmen sān ge rén yì zǔ, xiān shì yí cì ba.

I think revising together is better because we can help each other with problems. However, too many people might be noisy. How about trying groups of three first?

Match the connector to its job

Job	Example	What it adds
View	我觉得这个办法不错。	the speaker's judgment
Additional point	而且大家可以互相帮助。	another supporting point
Qualification	不过，需要先约好时间。	a limitation or drawback
Suggestion	不如先试一次吧。	a possible next step

认为 can also be used in speech, and 觉得 is not banned from a serious answer. Their suitability depends on tone and context; they are not a simple spoken/formal switch.

State an intention or preparation

我打算下周开始复习。 I intend to start revising next week.

我准备下周开始复习。 I plan to start revising next week.

我正在准备考试。 I am preparing for the exam.

准备 can express a plan or the activity of getting ready. 正在 and the following phrase clarify the third example. A plan can be genuine without an explicit time, but adding one makes arrangements easier to follow.

Suggest without assuming permission

不如坐地铁吧。 How about taking the metro?

你应该早点休息。 You should rest earlier.

最好提前买票。 It would be best to buy tickets in advance.

These are different ways of advising, not a fixed scale of politeness. Relationship, wording and intonation matter. 不如 can introduce a suggestion even when no earlier alternative was spoken aloud. 吧 often softens a suggestion, but does not automatically make a demand polite.

Respond to a practical objection

A partner says **可是我星期三没空。** But I am not free on Wednesday.

那我们星期四再一起复习，星期三先自己看书。 Then let's revise together on Thursday; on Wednesday we can read on our own first.

The reply changes the arrangement instead of ignoring the objection. Practise with a different unavailable day. Check that the final date is clear and the reason remains relevant.

Practice

1. Label the job of each connector: 我觉得 …… / 而且 …… / 不过 …… / 不如 …… 吧。
2. Fill the gap: 我们一起复习吧，＿＿可以互相帮助。(而且 / 不过)
3. Fill the gap: 坐地铁很快，＿＿早上人很多。(而且 / 不过)
4. Translate: How about going to the library first? (use 不如 …… 吧)
5. Is 准备 a plan or an activity in each sentence? A. 我准备明年去北京。B. 他正在准备晚饭。
6. Your partner says 可是我星期五要上课。Reply with a new arrangement in one or two sentences.

Mixed practice

These questions mix the patterns and use new situations.

7. Find and fix the problem. A classmate says 不如 can only start a suggestion after someone else's idea, and that 准备 always means you have already started preparing. Correct both rules.

8. Use it yourself. Suggest studying together, answer a friend who says they are busy on Thursday, and offer another day.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn

Answers and explanations

Mark your work, then correct each mistake in your own words.

■ Practice answers

1. View; additional point; qualification (a drawback); suggestion.
2. **而且**: helping each other is another point in favour.
3. **不过**: the crowd is a drawback of a good option.
4. **不如我们先去图书馆吧。**吧 softens the suggestion.
5. A: a plan (an intention, with a time). B: an activity (正在 shows it is happening now).
6. For example: **那我们星期六上午一起复习吧，星期五你先自己看看。** The reply changes the day and keeps the plan clear.

■ Mixed practice

7. 不如 often answers another idea, but it can also open a suggestion: 不如我们一起复习吧. 准备 can mean "plan to" as well as "prepare": 我准备明年去中国.

8. Model answer. 我觉得一起复习有帮助。不如星期四试一次吧？— 星期四没空？那星期五怎么样？

Review later. Tomorrow, make a suggestion, hear an objection, and change your plan aloud.

exercises.lol exercises.com.cn